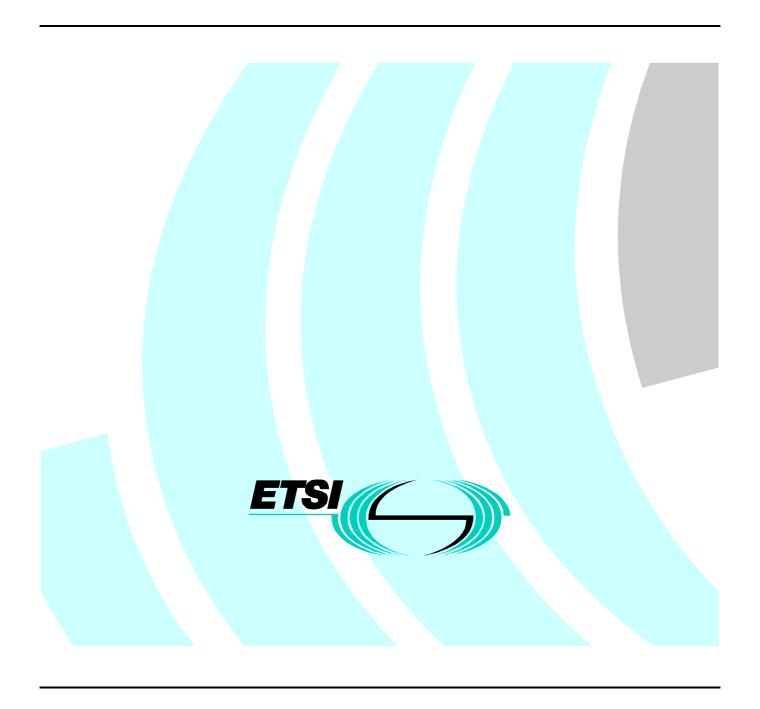
ETSITS 101 980 V1.1.1 (2001-09)

Technical Specification

Digital Radio Mondiale (DRM); System Specification



Reference DTS/JTC-DRM-01

Keywords broadcasting, digital, DRM, radio

ETSI

650 Route des Lucioles F-06921 Sophia Antipolis Cedex - FRANCE

Tel.: +33 4 92 94 42 00 Fax: +33 4 93 65 47 16

Siret N° 348 623 562 00017 - NAF 742 C Association à but non lucratif enregistrée à la Sous-Préfecture de Grasse (06) N° 7803/88

Important notice

Individual copies of the present document can be downloaded from: <u>http://www.etsi.org</u>

The present document may be made available in more than one electronic version or in print. In any case of existing or perceived difference in contents between such versions, the reference version is the Portable Document Format (PDF). In case of dispute, the reference shall be the printing on ETSI printers of the PDF version kept on a specific network drive within ETSI Secretariat.

Users of the present document should be aware that the document may be subject to revision or change of status.

Information on the current status of this and other ETSI documents is available at

http://portal.etsi.org/tb/status/status.asp

If you find errors in the present document, send your comment to: $\underline{\text{editor} @\, \text{etsi.fr}}$

Copyright Notification

No part may be reproduced except as authorized by written permission. The copyright and the foregoing restriction extend to reproduction in all media.

© European Telecommunications Standards Institute 2001. All rights reserved.

Contents

Intelle	ectual Property Rights	7
Forew	vord	7
Introd	luction	7
1	Scope	9
2	References	9
3	Definitions, symbols and abbreviations	9
3.1	Definitions	
3.2	Symbols	
3.3	Abbreviations	
4	General characteristics	12
4.1	System overview	12
4.2	System architecture	12
4.3	Source coding	14
4.4	Transmission modes	15
4.4.1	Signal bandwidth related parameters	15
4.4.2	Transmission efficiency related parameters	15
4.4.2.1		
4.4.2.2		
5	Source coding modes	17
5.1	Overview	17
5.1.1	AAC Audio Coding	18
5.1.2	MPEG CELP coding	18
5.1.3	MPEG HVXC coding	
5.1.4	SBR coding	
5.2	UEP and audio super framing	
5.3	AAC coding	20
5.3.1	AAC	20
5.3.1.1	1 AAC audio super frame	21
5.3.2	AAC + SBR	23
5.4	MPEG CELP coding	24
5.4.1	MPEG CELP	24
5.4.1.1		
5.5	HVXC	28
5.5.1	Definitions	29
5.5.1.1	1 HVXC source coder parameters	29
5.5.1.2	2 CRC bits for fixed bit rate modes	29
5.5.2	HVXC decoder	
5.5.3	HVXC encoder	30
5.5.3.1	• 1	
5.5.3.2		
5.5.3.3		
5.5.3.4		31
5.5.3.5		
5.5.3.6		
5.5.4	HVXC channel coding	
5.5.4.1		
5.5.4.2	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
5.5.5	Category Interleaving	
5.5.6	HVXC error detection and concealment	
5.5.6.1		
5.5.6.2		
5.5.6.2	1	
5.6	SBR	42

5.6.1	Conceptual overview	42
5.6.2	AAC + SBR Decoding Process	
5.6.2.1	Analysis Filterbank	
5.6.2.2	Synthesis Filterbank	
5.6.2.3	Gain Control	
5.6.2.4	T/F Grid Control	
5.6.2.5	Huffman Decoder	
5.6.3	AAC + SBR Protocol	
5.6.3.1	AAC + SBR syntax	
5.6.3.2	SBR bit stream element definitions	
	Multiplex definition	
6.1	Introduction	
6.2	Main Service Channel	
6.2.1	Introduction	
6.2.2	Structure	
6.2.3	Building the MSC	
6.2.3.1	Multiplex frames	
6.2.3.2	Hierarchical frames	
6.2.4	Reconfiguration	
6.3	Fast Access Channel	
6.3.1	Introduction	
6.3.2	Structure	
6.3.3	Channel parameters	
6.3.4	Service parameters	
6.3.5	CRC	
6.3.6	FAC repetition	
6.4	Service Description Channel	
6.4.1	Introduction	
6.4.2	Structure	
6.4.3	Data Entities	
6.4.3.1	Multiplex description data entity - type 0	
6.4.3.2	Label data entity - type 1	
6.4.3.3	Conditional access parameters data entity - type 2	
6.4.3.4	Frequency information data entity - type 3	
6.4.3.5	Frequency schedule data entity - type 4	
6.4.3.6	Application information data entity - type 5	
6.4.3.7	Announcement support and switching entity - type 6	
6.4.3.8	Region definition data entity - type 7	
6.4.3.9	Time and date information data entity - type 8	
6.4.3.10	J JI	
6.4.3.11	FAC channel parameters data entity - type 10	
6.4.3.12		
6.4.3.13		
6.4.3.14		
6.4.4	Summary of data entity characteristics	
6.4.5	Changing the content of the SDC	
6.4.6	Signalling of reconfigurations	
6.4.6.1	Service reconfigurations	
6.4.6.2	Channel reconfigurations	
6.5	Text message application	
6.5.1	Structure	
6.6	Packet mode	
6.6.1	Packet structure	
6.6.1.1	Header	
6.6.1.2	Data field	
6.6.2	Asynchronous streams	
6.6.3	Files	
6.6.4	Choosing the packet length	82
7 C	Channel coding and modulation	83
7.1	Introduction	

7.2	Transport multiplex adaptation and Energy dispersal	
7.2.1	Transport multiplex adaptation	83
7.2.1.1	MSC	83
7.2.1.2	FAC	86
7.2.1.3	SDC	86
7.2.2	Energy dispersal	87
7.3	Coding	88
7.3.1	Multilevel coding	88
7.3.1.1	Partitioning of bitstream in SM and HMsym	90
7.3.1.2	Partitioning of bitstream in HMmix	91
7.3.2	Component Code	92
7.3.3	Bit Interleaving	98
7.3.3.1	FAC	98
7.3.3.2	SDC	99
7.3.3.3	MSC	99
7.4	Signal constellations and mapping	101
7.5	Application of coding to the channels	105
7.5.1	Coding the MSC	105
7.5.1.1	SM	105
7.5.1.2	HMsym	106
7.5.1.3	HMmix	106
7.5.2	Coding the SDC	107
7.5.3	Coding the FAC	107
7.6	MSC Cell Interleaving	107
7.7	Mapping of MSC cells on the transmission super frame structure	109
0 T.		110
	ansmission structure	
8.1	Transmission frame structure and modes	
8.2	Propagation-related OFDM parameters	
8.3	Signal bandwidth related parameters	
8.3.1	Parameter definition	
8.3.2	Simulcast transmission	
8.4	Pilot cells	
8.4.1 8.4.2	Functions and derivation.	
	Frequency references	
8.4.2.1 8.4.2.2	Cell positions	
	Cell gains and phases	
8.4.3 8.4.3.1	Time references	
8.4.3.1	Cell positions and phases	
8.4.3.2 8.4.4	Cell gains	
8.4.4.1	Gain references	
8.4.4.2	Cell positions	
8.4.4.3	Cell gains	
8.4.4.3.1	Cell phases	
8.4.4.3.2	Robustness mode A	
8.4.4.3.3	Robustness mode B	
8.4.4.3.4	Robustness mode C	
8.4.4.3.5	Robustness mode D	
8.5	Control cells	
8.5.1	General	
8.5.2	FAC cells	
8.5.2.1	Cell positions	
8.5.2.2	Cell gains and phases	
8.5.3	SDC cells	
8.5.3.1	Cell positions.	
8.5.3.2	Cell gains and phases	
8.6	Data cells	
8.6.1	Cell positions	
8.6.2	Cell gains and phases	
3.0.2	Con Samo and phagos	127
Annex A	(informative): Simulated system performance	125

Definition of channel profiles	126
Example of mapping of logical frames to multiplex frames	129
Calculation of the CRC word	130
Indicative RF Protection ratios	132
Guidelines for emitter implementation	134
Guidelines for receiver implementation	135
checking and switching (AFS)	135
	137
Service capacity and bit rates	138
Audio tables	139
Numbers of input bits	142
Simulcast transmission	147
Pilot reference illustrations	149
MSC configuration examples	153
HVXC parameters	156
Bibliography	157
	Example of mapping of logical frames to multiplex frames

Intellectual Property Rights

IPRs essential or potentially essential to the present document may have been declared to ETSI. The information pertaining to these essential IPRs, if any, is publicly available for **ETSI members and non-members**, and can be found in ETSI SR 000 314: "Intellectual Property Rights (IPRs); Essential, or potentially Essential, IPRs notified to ETSI in respect of ETSI standards", which is available from the ETSI Secretariat. Latest updates are available on the ETSI Web server (http://www.etsi.org/legal/home.htm).

Pursuant to the ETSI IPR Policy, no investigation, including IPR searches, has been carried out by ETSI. No guarantee can be given as to the existence of other IPRs not referenced in ETSI SR 000 314 (or the updates on the ETSI Web server) which are, or may be, or may become, essential to the present document.

Foreword

This Technical Specification (TS) has been produced by Joint Technical Committee (JTC) of the European Broadcasting Union (EBU), Comité Européen de Normalization Electrotechnique (CENELEC) and the European Telecommunications Standards Institute (ETSI).

NOTE: The EBU/ETSI JTC Broadcast was established in 1990 to co-ordinate the drafting of standards in the specific field of broadcasting and related fields. Since 1995 the JTC Broadcast became a tripartite body by including in the Memorandum of Understanding also CENELEC, which is responsible for the standardization of radio and television receivers. The EBU is a professional association of broadcasting organizations whose work includes the co-ordination of its members' activities in the technical, legal, programme-making and programme-exchange domains. The EBU has active members in about 60 countries in the European broadcasting area; its headquarters is in Geneva.

European Broadcasting Union CH-1218 GRAND SACONNEX (Geneva) Switzerland

Tel: +41 22 717 21 11 Fax: +41 22 717 24 81

Introduction

The frequency bands used for broadcasting below 30 MHz are:

- Low frequency (LF) band from 148,5 kHz to 283,5 kHz, in ITU Region 1 [1] only;
- Medium frequency (MF) band from 526,5 kHz to 1 606,5 kHz, in ITU Regions 1 [1] and 3 [1] and from 525 kHz to 1 705 kHz in ITU Region 2 [1];
- High frequency (HF) bands a set of individual broadcasting bands in the frequency range 2,3 MHz to 27 MHz, generally available on a Worldwide basis.

These bands offer unique propagation capabilities that permit the achievement of:

- Large coverage areas, whose size and location may be dependent upon the time of day, season of the year or period in the (approximately) 11 year sunspot cycle;
- Portable and mobile reception with relatively little impairment caused by the environment surrounding the receiver.

There is thus a desire to continue broadcasting in these bands, perhaps especially in the case of international broadcasting where the HF bands offer the only reception possibilities which do not also involve the use of local repeater stations.

However, broadcasting services in these bands:

- use analogue techniques;
- are subject to limited quality;
- are subject to considerable interference as a result of the long-distance propagation mechanisms which prevail in this part of the frequency spectrum and the large number of users.

As a direct result of the above considerations, there is a desire to effect a transfer to digital transmission and reception techniques in order to provide the increase in quality which is needed to retain listeners who, increasingly, have a wide variety of other programme reception media possibilities, usually already offering higher quality and reliability.

In order to meet the need for a digital transmission system suitable for use in all of the bands below 30 MHz, the Digital Radio Mondiale (DRM) consortium was formed in early 1998. The DRM consortium is a non-profit making body which seeks to develop and promote the use of the DRM system worldwide. Its members include broadcasters, network providers, receiver and transmitter manufacturers and research institutes. More information is available from their website (http://www.drm.org/).

1 Scope

The present document gives the specification for the Digital Radio Mondiale (DRM) system for digital transmissions in the broadcasting bands below 30 MHz.

2 References

The following documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of the present document.

- References are either specific (identified by date of publication and/or edition number or version number) or non-specific.
- For a specific reference, subsequent revisions do not apply.
- For a non-specific reference, the latest version applies.
- [1] ITU-R Radio Regulations.
- [2] ISO/IEC 14496-3: "Information technology Coding of audio-visual objects Part 3: Audio".
- [3] ISO/IEC 14496-3/Amd 1: "Audio extensions".
- [4] ETSI EN 300 401: "Radio Broadcasting Systems; Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) to mobile, portable and fixed receivers".
- [5] EN 50067: "Specification of the radio data system (RDS) for VHF/FM sound broadcasting in the frequency range from 87,5 to 108,0 MHz".
- [6] ISO/IEC 10646-1: "Information technology Universal Multiple-Octet Coded Character Set (UCS) Part 1: Architecture and Basic Multilingual Plane".
- [7] ISO 639-2: "Codes for the representation of names of languages Part 2: Alpha-3 code".
- [8] ISO 3166 (all parts): "Codes for the representation of names of countries and their subdivisions".
- [9] ISO 8859-1: "Information technology 8-bit single-byte coded graphic character sets Part 1: Latin alphabet No. 1".
- [10] ETSI TS 101 756: "Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB); Registered Tables".
- [11] ITU-R Recommendation BS.559-2: "Objective measurement of radio-frequency protection ratios in LF, MF and HF broadcasting".
- [12] ITU-R Recommendation SM.328-10: "Spectra and bandwidth of emissions".

3 Definitions, symbols and abbreviations

3.1 Definitions

For the purposes of the present document, the following terms and definitions apply:

cell: sine wave portion of duration T_s , transmitted with a given amplitude and phase and corresponding to a carrier position

NOTE 1: Each OFDM symbol is the sum of K such sine wave portions equally spaced in frequency.

energy dispersal: operation involving deterministic selective complementing of bits in the logical frame, intended to reduce the possibility that systematic patterns result in unwanted regularity in the transmitted signal

Fast Access Channel (FAC): channel of the multiplex data stream which contains the information that is necessary to find services and begin to decode the multiplex

Main Service Channel (MSC): channel of the multiplex data stream which occupies the major part of the transmission frame and which carries all the digital audio services, together with possible supporting and additional data services

mod: the modulo operator

```
NOTE 2: (x \text{ mod } y) = z, where y > 0, such that x = qy + z, q is an integer, and 0 \le z < y.
```

OFDM symbol: transmitted signal for that portion of time when the modulating amplitude and phase state is held constant on each of the equally-spaced carriers in the signal

reserved for future addition (rfa): bits with this designation shall be set to zero

NOTE 3: Receivers shall ignore these bits.

reserved for future use (rfu): bits with this designation shall be set to zero

NOTE 4: Receivers shall check that these bits are zero in order to determine the valid status of the other fields in the same scope.

Service Description Channel (SDC): channel of the multiplex data stream which gives information to decode the services included in the multiplex

NOTE 5: The SDC also provides additional information to enable a receiver to find alternative sources of the same

Single Frequency Network (SFN): network of transmitters sharing the same radio frequency to achieve a large area coverage

transmission frame: a number of consecutive OFDM symbols (duration of 400 ms), whereby the first OFDM symbol contains the time reference cells

transmission super frame: three consecutive transmission frames (duration of 1 200 ms), whereby the first OFDM symbols contain the SDC block

logical frame: contains data of one stream during 400 ms

multiplex frame: logical frames from all streams form a multiplex frame (duration of 400 ms)

NOTE 6: It is the relevant basis for coding and interleaving.

3.2 Symbols

For the purposes of the present document, the following symbols apply:

$E[\]$	expectation value of the expression in brackets
f_c	reference frequency of the emitted signal
K	number of active carriers in the OFDM symbol
K_{max}	carrier index of the upper active carrier in the OFDM signal
K_{\min}	carrier index of the lower active carrier in the OFDM signal
L_{MUX}	number of input bits per multiplex frame for the multilevel encoding
N_{MUX}	number of MSC cells (QAM symbols) per multiplex frame
T	elementary time period, equal to 83 ^{1/3} μs (1/12 kHz)
T_f	duration of the transmission frame, equal to 400 ms
T_g	duration of the guard interval
T_{s}	duration of an OFDM symbol
T_{sf}	duration of the transmission super-frame built from three transmission frame

 T_u duration of the useful (orthogonal) part of an OFDM symbol, excluding the guard interval X^* complex conjugate of value X

round towards plus infinity round towards minus infinity

3.3 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document, the following abbreviations apply:

AAC Advanced Audio Coding

AFS Alternative Frequency Switching

BER Bit Error Ratio

CELP Code Excited Linear Prediction
CRC Cyclic Redundancy Check
DFT Discrete Fourier Transform
EEP Equal Error Protection
FAC Fast Access Channel
HF High Frequency

HVXC Harmonic Vector eXcitation Coding IFFT Inverse Fast Fourier Transform

ISO International Organization for Standardization

LF Low Frequency

LPC Linear Predictive Coding
LSb Least Significant bit
LSP Line Spectral Pairs
MF Medium Frequency

MPEG Moving Picture Experts Group

MSb Most Significant bit MSC Main Service Channel

OFDM Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplexing

PRBS Pseudo-Random Binary Sequence QAM Quadrature Amplitude Modulation

RF Radio Frequency

rfa reserved for future addition reserved for future use rfu SBR Spectral Band Replication Service Description Channel SDC Single Frequency Network SFN SM Simple Modulation SPP Standard Protected Part **Unequal Error Protection** UEP

uimsbf unsigned integer most significant bit first

VSPP Very Strongly Protected Part

4 General characteristics

4.1 System overview

The DRM system is designed to be used at any frequency below 30 MHz, i.e. within the long wave, medium wave and short wave broadcasting bands, with variable channelization constraints and propagation conditions throughout these bands. In order to satisfy these operating constraints, different transmission modes are available. A transmission mode is defined by transmission parameters classified in two types:

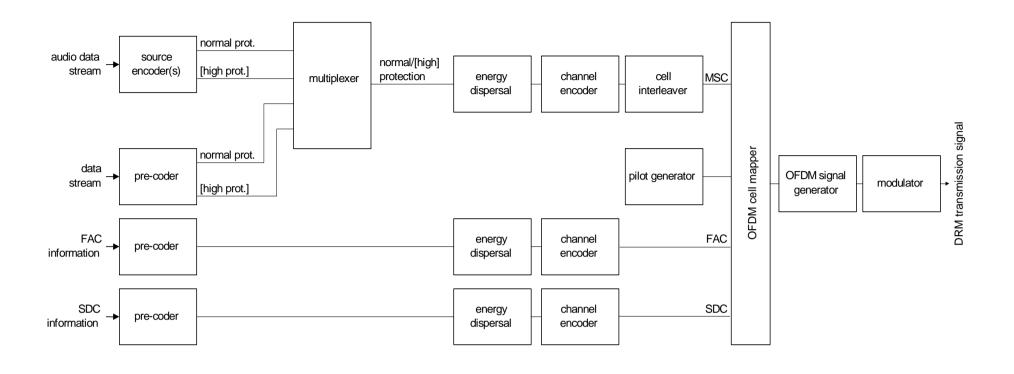
- signal bandwidth related parameters;
- transmission efficiency related parameters.

The first type of parameters defines the total amount of frequency bandwidth for one transmission. Efficiency related parameters allow a trade-off between capacity (useful bit rate) and ruggedness to noise, multipath and Doppler.

4.2 System architecture

This clause gives a general presentation of the system architecture, based on the synoptic diagram of figure 1, which gives reference to the clauses defining the individual parts of the system.

Figure 1 describes the general flow of different classes of information (audio, data, ...) and does not differentiate between different services that may be conveyed within one or more classes of information. A detailed description on the distribution of services onto those classes can be found in clause 6.



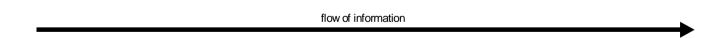


Figure 1: Conceptual DRM transmission block diagram

The source encoder and pre-coders ensure the adaptation of the input streams onto an appropriate digital transmission format. For the case of audio source encoding, this functionality includes audio compression techniques as described in clauses 4.3 and 5. The output of the source encoder(s) and the data stream pre-coder may comprise two parts requiring different levels of protection within the subsequent channel encoder. All services have to use the same two levels of protection.

The multiplexer combines the protection levels of all data and audio services as described in clause 6.

The energy dispersal provides a deterministic selective complementing of bits in order to reduce the possibility that systematic patterns result in unwanted regularity in the transmitted signal.

The channel encoder adds redundant information as a means for quasi error-free transmission and defines the mapping of the digital encoded information onto QAM cells as described in clause 7.

Cell interleaving spreads consecutive QAM cells onto a sequence of cells quasi-randomly separated in time and frequency, in order to provide robust transmission in time-frequency dispersive channels. The pilot generator provides means to derive channel state information in the receiver, allowing for a coherent demodulation of the signal.

The OFDM cell mapper collects the different classes of cells and places them on the time-frequency grid as specified in clause 7.

The OFDM signal generator transforms each ensemble of cells with same time index to a time domain representation of the signal. Consecutively, the OFDM symbol is obtained from this time domain representation by inserting a guard interval as a cyclic repetition of a portion of the signal, as specified in clause 7.

The modulator converts the digital representation of the OFDM signal into the analogue signal in the air. This operation involves digital-to-analogue conversion and filtering that have to comply with spectrum requirements as described in annex E.

4.3 Source coding

Within the constraints of broadcasting regulations in broadcasting channels below 30 MHz and the parameters of the coding and modulation scheme applied, the bit rate available for source coding is in the range from 8 kbit/s (half channels) to \approx 20 kbit/s (standard channels) to up to \approx 72 kbit/s (double channels).

In order to offer optimum quality at a given bit rate, the system offers different source coding schemes:

- a subset of MPEG-4 AAC (Advanced Audio Coding) including error robustness tools for generic mono and stereo audio broadcasting;
- a subset of MPEG-4 CELP speech coder for error robust speech broadcasting in mono, for cases when only a low bit rate is available or especially high error robustness is required;
- a subset of MPEG-4 HVXC speech coding for very low bit rate and error robust speech broadcasting in mono, especially well suited also for speech data base applications;
- Spectral Band Replication (SBR), an audio coding enhancement tool that allows to achieve full audio bandwidth at low bit rates. It can be applied to AAC and CELP.

The bit-stream transport format of the source coding schemes has been modified to meet the requirements of the DRM system (audio superframing). Unequal error protection (UEP) can be applied to improve the system behaviour in error prone channels.

Provision is made for further enhancement of the audio system by linking two DRM signals together.

4.4 Transmission modes

4.4.1 Signal bandwidth related parameters

The current channel widths for radio broadcasting below 30 MHz are 9 kHz and 10 kHz. The DRM system is designed to be used:

- within these nominal bandwidths, in order to satisfy the current planning situation;
- within half these bandwidths (4,5 kHz or 5 kHz) in order to allow for simulcast with analogue AM signals;
- within twice these bandwidths (18 kHz or 20 kHz) to provide for larger transmission capacity where and when the planning constraints allow for such facility.

These signal bandwidth related parameters are specified in clause 8.

4.4.2 Transmission efficiency related parameters

For any value of the signal bandwidth parameter, transmission efficiency related parameters are defined to allow a trade off between capacity (useful bit rate) and ruggedness to noise, multipath and Doppler. These parameters are of two types:

- coding rate and constellation parameters, defining which code rate and constellations are used to convey data;
- OFDM symbol parameters, defining the structure of the OFDM symbols to be used as a function of the propagation conditions.

4.4.2.1 Coding rates and constellations

As a function of the desired protection associated within each service or part of a service, the system provides a range of options to achieve one or two levels of protection at a time. Depending on service requirements, these levels of protection may be determined by either the code rate of the channel encoder (e.g. 0,6 ...), by the constellation order (e.g. 4-QAM, 16-QAM, 64-QAM), or by hierarchical modulation. Detailed definition of these options is given in clause 7.

4.4.2.2 OFDM parameter set

The OFDM parameter set is presented in this clause. The specification of the signal waveform is given in clause 8. These values are defined for different propagation-related transmission conditions to provide various robustness modes for the signal. In a given bandwidth, the different robustness modes provide different available data rates. Table 1 illustrates typical uses of the robustness modes.

Robustness Mode
Typical Propagation Conditions
A Gaussian channels, with minor fading
B Time and frequency selective channels, with longer delay spread
C As robustness mode B, but with higher Doppler spread
D As robustness mode B, but with severe delay and Doppler spread

Table 1: Robustness Mode uses

The transmitted signal comprises a succession of OFDM symbols, each symbol being made of a guard interval followed by the so-called useful part of the symbol. Each symbol is the sum of K sine wave portions equally spaced in frequency. Each sine wave portion, called a "cell", is transmitted with a given amplitude and phase and corresponds to a carrier position. Each carrier is referenced by the index k, k belonging to the interval $\left[k_{\min}, k_{\max}\right]$ (k = 0 corresponds to the reference frequency of the transmitted signal).

The time-related OFDM symbol parameters are expressed in multiples of the elementary time period T, which is equal to $83^{1/3}$ μ s. These parameters are:

- T_g : duration of the guard interval;
- T_s : duration of an OFDM symbol;
- T_u : duration of the useful (orthogonal) part of an OFDM symbol (i.e. excluding the guard interval).

The OFDM symbols are grouped to form transmission frames of duration \mathcal{T}_f .

As specified in clause 8, a certain number of cells in each OFDM symbol are transmitted with a predetermined amplitude and phase, in order to be used as references in the demodulation process. They shall be called "reference pilots" and represent a certain proportion of the total number of cells.

Table 2: OFDM symbol parameters

Parameters list	Robustness Mode						
	Α	В	С	D			
T (μs)	83 ^{1/3}	83 ^{1/3}	83 ^{1/3}	83 ^{1/3}			
T (me)	24	21 ^{1/3}	14 ^{2/3}	91/3			
T_u (ms)	$(288 \times T)$	(256 × T)	$(176 \times T)$	$(112 \times T)$			
T_g (ms)	2 ^{2/3}	5 ^{1/3}	5 ^{1/3}	7 ^{1/3}			
i g (mo)	$(32 \times T)$	$(64 \times T)$	$(64 \times T)$	$(88 \times T)$			
T_g/T_u	1/9	1/4	4/11	11/14			
$T_s = T_u + T_g \text{ (ms)}$	26 ^{2/3}	26 ^{2/3}	20	16 ^{2/3}			
T_f (ms)	400	400	400	400			

5 Source coding modes

5.1 Overview

The source coding options in the DRM system are shown in figure 2.

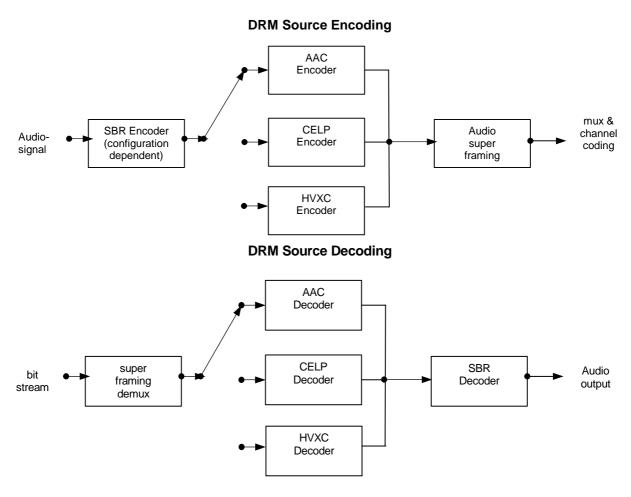


Figure 2: Source coding overview

As described in clause 4.3, the DRM system offers audio coding (AAC) and speech coding (CELP and HVXC). In general, a high frequency reconstruction method (SBR) can be used to enhance the perceptual audio quality. However, at present the use of SBR is only defined for use with AAC. Special care is taken so that the encoded audio can be composed into audio super frames of constant length. Multiplexing and UEP of audio/speech services is done by means of the multiplex and channel coding units. Audio specific configuration information is transmitted in the SDC (see clause 6.4.3.10).

5.1.1 AAC Audio Coding

For generic audio coding, a subset of the MPEG-4 Advanced Audio Coding (AAC) toolbox chosen to best suit the DRM system environment is used. For example a standard configuration for use in one short wave channel could be 20 kbit/s mono AAC.

Specific features of the AAC stream within the DRM system are:

- Bit rate: AAC can be used at any bit rate. Byte-alignment of the 400 ms audio super frame leads to a granularity of 20 bit/s for the AAC bit rate;
- Sampling rates: permitted sampling rates are 12 kHz and 24 kHz;
- Transform length: the transform length is 960 to ensure that one audio frame corresponds to 80 ms or 40 ms in time. This is required to harmonize CELP and AAC frame lengths and thus to allow the combination of an integer number of audio frames to build an audio super frame of 400 ms duration;
- Error resilience: a subset of MPEG-4 tools is used to improve the AAC bit stream error resilience in error prone channels:
- Audio super framing: 5 (12 kHz) or 10 (24 kHz) audio frames are composed into one audio super frame, which always corresponds to 400 ms in time. The audio frames in the audio super frames are encoded together such that each audio super frame is of constant length, i.e. that bit exchange between audio frames is only possible within an audio super frame. One audio super frame is always placed in one logical frame (see clause 6). In this way no additional synchronization is needed for the audio coding. Retrieval of frame boundaries and provisions for UEP are also taken care of within the audio super frame;
- UEP: better graceful degradation and better operation at higher BERs is achieved by applying UEP to the AAC bit stream. Unequal error protection is realized via the multiplex/coding units.

5.1.2 MPEG CELP coding

MPEG CELP speech coding is offered in the DRM system to allow for reasonable speech quality at bit rates significantly below the standard rate (for example "half rate" operation at 8 kbit/s). Possible scenarios for the use of the speech coder are:

- Dual/triple speech applications: instead of one audio program at 20 kbit/s to 24 kbit/s, the channel contains two or three speech signals of 8 kbit/s to 10 kbit/s each, allowing simultaneous speech transmissions;
- Speech services in addition to an audio service;
- Simulcast transmissions: in case of analogue/digital simulcast only bit rates as low as 8 kbit/s may be available;
- Very robust speech applications: due to its nature a speech coder can be expected to offer higher robustness
 against channel errors. Therefore 8 kbit/s speech coding can be used to do ultra robust speech coding in one
 channel.

Basic features of MPEG CELP coding are:

- 8 kHz or 16 kHz sampling rate;
- Bit rates between 4 kbit/s and 20 kbit/s;
- Error robustness;
- Composition of an integer number of CELP frames to build one audio super frame.

5.1.3 MPEG HVXC coding

MPEG-4 HVXC (Harmonic Vector eXitation Coding) speech coding is offered in the DRM system to allow for reasonable speech quality at very low bit rates such as 2,0 kbit/s. The operating bit rates of HVXC open up new applications for DRM such as:

- Speech services in addition to an audio service;
- Multi-language application;
- Solid-state storage of multiple programs such as news, data base in a card radio (e.g. total of about 4,5 hours of radio programs can be stored in 4 MByte Flash memory);
- Time scale modification for fast playback/browsing of stored program;
- Highly error robust transmission with or without hierarchical modulation scheme.

Basic features of HVXC coding are:

- 8 kHz sampling rate;
- Bit rates of 2,0 kbit/s and 4,0 kbit/s for fixed rate coding;
- Time scale and pitch modification of arbitrary amounts;
- Error robust syntax is supported, and a CRC tool can be used to improve the error resilience of the HVXC bitstream in error prone channels;
- Composition of a constant integer number of HVXC frames (20) to build one audio super frame.

5.1.4 SBR coding

To maintain a reasonable perceived audio quality at low bit rates, classical audio or speech source coding algorithms need to limit the audio bandwidth and to operate at low sampling rates. It is desirable to be able to offer high audio bandwidth also in very low bit rate environments. This can be realized by the use of SBR (Spectral Band Replication).

The purpose of SBR is to recreate the missing high frequency band of the audio signal that could not be coded by the encoder. In order to do this in the best possible way, some side information needs to be transmitted in the audio bitstream, removing a small percentage of the available data rate from the audio coder. This side information is computed on the full bandwidth signal, prior to encoding and aids the reconstruction of the high frequencies after audio/speech decoding.

SBR exists in two versions. SBR-LC, a tool of low complexity, that offers intermediate sound quality, and SBR-HQ a tool that offers higher sound quality compared to SBR-LC, albeit at a somewhat higher complexity. Both versions are encoder and bitstream compatible and thus offer a "future-proof" upgrade concept. The version difference is only reflected in the decoder design.

The SBR technique is described in detail in clause 5.6.

5.2 UEP and audio super framing

Today's coding schemes are highly optimized in terms of coding efficiency and according to information theory this should lead to the fact, that the entropy of the bits is nearly equal. If this assumption is true, then the channel coding must be optimized, such that the total amount of residual errors usually referred to as bit error rate (BER) is minimized. This criteria can be fulfilled by a channel coding method called equal error protection (EEP), were all information bits are protected with the same amount of redundancy.

However, the audible effects of errors are not independent of the part of the bitstream that was hit by the error. This behaviour of unequal error sensitivity is well known for source coding schemes that are used in broadcast and communication systems, like Eureka DAB or GSM. The optimized solution to cope with this unequal error sensitivity is called unequal error protection (UEP). In such a system, higher protection is assigned to the more sensitive information, whereas lower protection is assigned to the less sensitive part of the bitstream.

To accommodate for UEP channel coding, it is necessary to have frames with a constant length and a UEP profile that is constant as well for a given bit rate. Since AAC is a coding scheme with a variable length, several coded frames are grouped together to build one audio super frame. The bit rate of the audio super frame is constant. Since the channel coding is based on audio super frames, the audio super frames itself consist of two parts: a higher protected part and a lower protected part. Therefore, the coded audio frames itself have to be split into these two part. Further details on the audio super frame structure of AAC, CELP and HVXC is provided in the subsequent clauses. Note that HVXC is intended for use with the EEP scheme only.

Table 3: Syntax of audio_super_frame()

```
Syntax No. of bits Note

Audio_super_frame(audio_info)  // audio info from the SDC

{
    switch (audio_info.audio_coding) {
        case AAC: aac_super_frame(audio_info)
            break;
        case CELP: celp_super_frame(audio_info)
            break;
        case HVXC: hvxc_super_frame(audio_info)
            break;
    }
}
```

NOTE: The SDC describes the audio coder used, and the parameters associated with that coder. It also provides information about the sampling rate and bit rate used (see clause 6).

5.3 AAC coding

The following two clauses explain how the AAC and AAC + SBR frames fit into the audio super frame.

5.3.1 AAC

ISO/IEC 14496-3 [2] together with ISO/IEC 14496-3/Amd 1 [3] define the MPEG-4 Audio standard. The audio coding standard MPEG-4 AAC is part of the MPEG-4 Audio standard. Two versions are defined, but only version 2 is intended for the use in error prone channels. The AAC bitstreams in the DRM system are therefore MPEG-4 version 2 bitstreams. From the possible audio object types, only the Error Resilient (ER) AAC Low Complexity object type (Object Type ID = 17), which is part of the High Quality Audio Profile, will be used in the DRM system.

DRM specific usage of MPEG-4 AAC: Three error resilience tools may be used within an MPEG-4 version 2 AAC bitstream: HCR (Huffman Codeword Reordering), VCB11 (Virtual Codebooks for Codebook 11) and RVLC (Reversible Variable Length Coding). In the DRM system, all AAC bitstreams shall use the HCR tool, since this tool reduces the error sensitivity of the bitstream significantly with a minimum of overhead. The VCB11 tool shall be used, since for low bit rates, the VCB11 overhead is less than 1 %. The RVLC tool shall not be used, since it introduces a significant bit rate overhead that would be a major drawback for the low bit rates used by DRM.

The MPEG-4 AAC tool PNS (Perceptual Noise Substitution) shall not be used in DRM since SBR provides this functionality more appropriately.

For DRM the 960 transform shall be used.

When 12 kHz sampling is used, 5 AAC frames shall be combined into one audio super frame.

When 24 kHz sampling is used, 10 AAC frames shall be combined into one audio super frame.

The AAC sampling frequency shall be 24 kHz when the stereo mode is used.

No standard extension_payload() shall be used and the only allowed extension is SBR (signalled via SDC).

The left and the right channel in one stereo audio frame are transmitted in an interleaved way to achieve a decreasing error sensitivity within the stereo frame.

The element_instance_tag for a single_channel_element(), respectively a channel_pair_element(), shall not be used in order to save 4 bits.

Any DRM AAC bitstream can easily be translated into an MPEG-4 V2 compliant bitstream by applying the above rules.

The MPEG-4 standard defines how the bits for one raw error resilient AAC audio frame are stored. Each element of the error resilient AAC bitstream is assigned an error sensitivity category. In the DRM system there are two possible error resilient AAC audio frames:

mono audio frame

One mono audio frame consists of three consecutive parts, hereinafter called mono1, mono2 and mono3. Mono1 contains the side information (SI) bits, mono2 contains the TNS bits and mono3 contains the spectral data bits. The error sensitivity decreases from mono1 to mono3.

stereo audio frame

One stereo audio frame consists of seven consecutive parts, hereinafter called stereo1 (common side info), stereo2 (side info left channel), stereo3 (side info right channel), stereo4 (TNS left channel), stereo5 (TNS right channel), stereo6 (spectral data left channel), stereo7 (spectral data right channel). With this interleaving of left and right channel, the error sensitivity is decreasing from stereo1 to stereo7.

5.3.1.1 AAC audio super frame

Table 4: Syntax of aac super frame()

```
Syntax
                                                                                        No. of bits
                                                                                                         Note
aac_super_frame(audio_info)
                                        // audio info from the SDC
   switch (audio_info.audio_sampling_rate) { // only 12 000 and 24 000 is allowed
      case 12000: num_frames = 5;
          break:
      case 24000: num_frames = 10;
         break;
   aac_super_frame_header(num_frames - 1)
   for (f = 0; f < num\_frames; f++) {
      // higher_protected_block
      for (b = 0; b < num_higher_protected_bytes; b++)
          audio_frame[f][b]
      aac_crc_bits[f]
                                                                                                     see annex D
   // lower_protected_part
   for (f = 0; f < num\_frames; f++) 
      num_lower_protected_bytes = frame_length[f] - num_higher_protected_bytes;
      for (b = 0; b < num_lower_protected_bytes; b++)
                                                                                      8
          audio_frame[f][num_higher_protected_bytes + b]
   }
NOTE 1: num_higher_protected_bytes is derived from the UEP profile used (see clause 6).
         audio_frame is either an AAC or an AAC + SBR frame.
```

Table 5: Syntax of aac_super_frame_header()

```
Syntax
                                                                                        No. of bits
                                                                                                         Note
aac_super_frame_header(num_borders)
   previous border = 0;
   for (n = 0; n < num borders; n++) {
      frame_length[n] = frame_border - previous_border; // frame border in bytes
                                                                                       12
      previous border = frame border;
   frame_length[num_borders] = audio_payload_length - previous_border;
   if (num borders == 9)
      reserved
                                     // byte-alignment
NOTE:
          The audio_payload_length is derived from the length of the audio super frame
          (data length of part A + data length of part B) subtracting the audio super frame overhead (bytes used
          for the audio super frame header() and for the aac_crc_bits).
```

higher protected part

The higher protected part contains one header followed by num_frames higher protected blocks. num_frames is the number of audio frames in the audio super frame.

header

The header contains information to recover the frame lengths of the num_frames AAC frames stored in the audio super frame.

All the frame lengths are derived from the absolute positions of the frame borders. These frame borders are stored consecutively in the header. Each frame border occupies 12 bits (unsigned integer, most significant bit first). The frame border is measured in bytes from the start of the AAC bitstream sequence. 4 padding bits are added in case num_frames==10. num_frames-1 frame borders are stored in the header.

higher protected block

One higher protected block contains a certain amount of bytes from the start of each AAC frame, dependent upon the UEP profile. One 8-bit CRC check derived from the CRC-bits of the corresponding AAC frame follows (see annex D for CRC calculation). For a mono signal, the CRC-bits cover (mono1, mono2). For a stereo signal, the CRC-bits cover (stereo1, stereo2, stereo3, stereo4, stereo5).

lower protected part

The lower protected bytes (the remaining bytes not stored in the higher protected part) of the AAC frames are stored consecutively in the lower protected part.

Figure 3 illustrates an example audio super frame for a 24 kHz sampled signal.

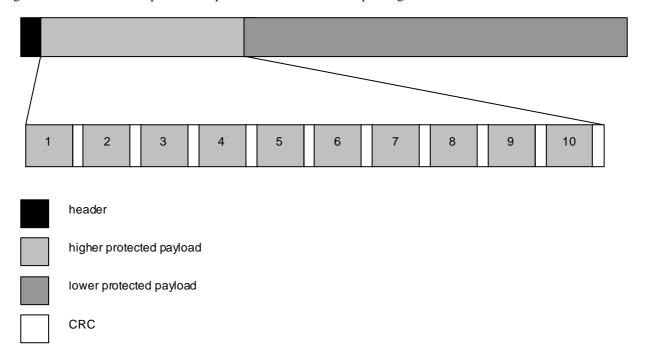


Figure 3: Example AAC audio super frame (24 kHz)

5.3.2 AAC + SBR

The SBR sampling frequency shall be 48 kHz and the AAC sampling frequency shall be 24 kHz. One raw AAC + SBR frame contains an AAC part and a SBR part. The SBR part of the data is located at the end of the frame. The first bit in the SBR-bitstream is the last bit in the frame, and the SBR bits are thus written/read in reversed order. In this way, the starting points of respective part of the frame data are always easily found.

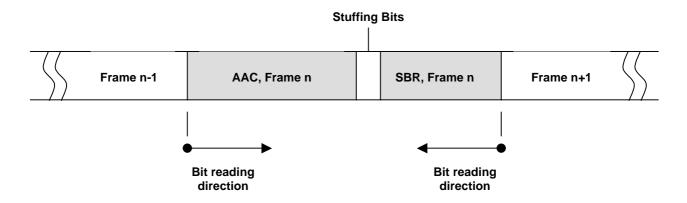


Figure 4: AAC + SBR frame

Both AAC and SBR data-sizes vary from frame to frame. The total size of the individual frames, now including the SBR data, can be derived from the aac_super_frame_header() as described in clause 5.3.1. Thus no extra signalling due to the varying SBR bit rate is needed.

The AAC + SBR frames are inserted into the audio super frame in the same manner as when SBR is not used.

For source coding bit rates at 20 kbit/s or greater, SBR shall be used. For bit rates below 20 kbit/s, SBR may be used.

The details of the SBR-bitstream are described in clause 5.5.3.

5.4 MPEG CELP coding

5.4.1 MPEG CELP

ISO/IEC 14496-3 [2] together with ISO/IEC 14496-3/Amd 1[3] define the MPEG-4 Audio standard. The speech coding standard MPEG-4 CELP (Code Excited Linear Prediction) is part of the MPEG-4 Audio standard. Two versions are defined, but only version 2 is intended for the use in error prone channels. The CELP bitstreams in the DRM system are therefore MPEG-4 version 2 bitstreams. From the possible audio object types, only the Error Resilient (ER) CELP object type (Object Type ID = 24), which is part of the High Quality Audio Profile, will be used in the DRM system.

The MPEG-4 CELP covers the compression and decoding of natural speech sound at bit rates ranging between 4 kbit/s and 24 kbit/s. MPEG-4 CELP is a well-known coding algorithm with new functionality. Conventional CELP coders offer compression at a single bit rate and are optimized for specific applications. Compression is one of the functionalities provided by MPEG-4 CELP, but MPEG-4 also enables the use of one basic coder in multiple applications. It provides scalability in bit rate and bandwidth, as well as the ability to generate bitstreams at arbitrary bit rates. The MPEG-4 CELP coder supports two sampling rates, namely, 8 kHz and 16 kHz. The associated bandwidths are 100 Hz to 3 800 Hz for 8 kHz sampling and 50 Hz to 7 000 Hz for 16 kHz sampling.

A basic block diagram of the CELP decoder is given in figure 5.

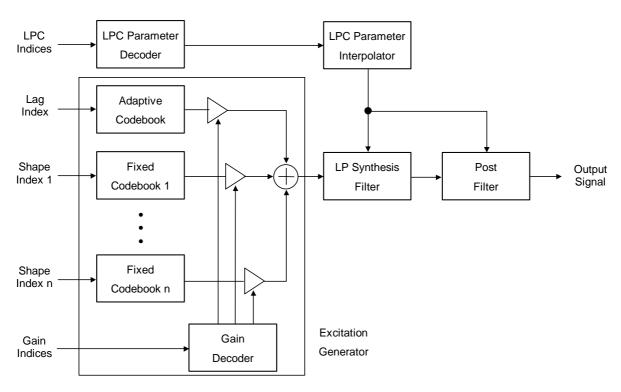


Figure 5: Block diagram of a CELP decoder

The CELP decoder primarily consists of an excitation generator and a synthesis filter. Additionally, CELP decoders often include a post-filter. The excitation generator has an adaptive codebook to model periodic components, fixed codebooks to model random components and a gain decoder to represent a speech signal level. Indices for the codebooks and gains are provided by the encoder. The codebook indices (pitch-lag index for the adaptive codebook and shape index for the fixed codebook) and gain indices (adaptive and fixed codebook gains) are used to generate the excitation signal. It is then filtered by the linear predictive synthesis filter (LP synthesis filter). Filter coefficients are reconstructed using the LPC indices, then are interpolated with the filter coefficients of successive analysis frames. Finally, a post-filter can optionally be applied in order to enhance the speech quality.

The MPEG-4 CELP coder offers the following functionalities: Multiple bit rates, Bit rate Scalability, Bandwidth Scalability, and FineRate Control. DRM shall only use the multiple bit rates functionality.

Multiple bit rates: the available bit rates depend on the sampling rate. The following fixed bit rates can be used:

Table 6: Fixed bit rates for the CELP coder

Bit rates for the 8 kHz sampling rate (bit/s)	Bit rates for the 16 kHz sampling rate (bit/s)
3 850, 4 250, 4 650, 5 700, 6 000, 6 300, 6 600,	10 900, 11 500, 12 100, 12 700, 13 300, 13 900,
6 900, 7 100, 7 300, 7 700, 8 300, 8 700, 9 100,	14 300, 14 700, 15 900, 17 100, 17 900, 18 700,
9 500, 9 900, 10 300, 10 500, 10 700, 11 000,	19 500, 20 300, 21 100, 13 600, 14 200, 14 800,
11 400, 11 800, 12 000, 12 200	15 400, 16 000, 16 600, 17 000, 17 400, 18 600,
	19 800, 20 600, 21 400, 22 200, 23 000, 23 800

The algorithmic delay of the CELP coder comes from the frame length and an additional look ahead length. The frame length depends on the coding mode and the bit rate. The look ahead length, which is an informative parameter, also depends on the coding mode. The delays presented below are applicable to the modes used in DRM.

Table 7: Delay and frame length for the CELP coder at 8 kHz sampling rate

Bit rate (bit/s)	Delay (ms)	Frame Length (ms)
3 850, 4 250, 4 650	45	40
5 700, 6 000, 6 300, 6 600, 6 900, 7 100, 7 300, 7 700, 8 300, 8 700, 9 100, 9 500, 9 900, 10 300, 10 500, 10 700	25	20
11 000, 11 400, 11 800, 12 000, 12 200	15	10

Table 8: Delay and frame length for the CELP coder at 16 kHz sampling rate

Bit rate (bit/s)	Delay (ms)	Frame Length (ms)
10 900, 11 500, 12 100, 12 700, 13 300, 13 900, 14 300,	25	20
14 700, 15 900, 17 100, 17 900, 18 700, 19 500, 20 300, 21 100		
13 600, 14 200, 14 800, 15 400, 16 000, 16 600, 17 000,	15	10
17 400, 18 600, 19 800, 20 600, 21 400, 22 200, 23 000, 23 800		

5.4.1.1 CELP audio super frame

CELP frames have a fixed frame length. The CELP audio frames are grouped together to form audio super frames of 400 ms duration. UEP is applicable. The start of each audio frame is mapped into the higher protected part, the remaining bits are allocated to the lower protected part. The partitioning of the CELP frames is given in tables 10 and 11. The CELP bit rate index is signalled in the SDC.

Table 9: Syntax of celp_super_frame()

```
Syntax
                                                                                         No. of bits
                                                                                                          Note
celp_super_frame(celp_table_ind)
                                            // CELP table index from the SDC
   switch (audio_info.audio_sampling_rate) { // only 8 000 and 16 000 is allowed
          (num_frames, num_higher_protected_bits, num_lower_protected_bits)
      = read_table_10 (CELP_index)
          break;
      case 16000:
          (num_frames, num_higher_protected_bits, num_lower_protected_bits)
      = read_table_11 (CELP_index)
          break;
   for (f = 0; f < num_frames; f++) {
      // higher_protected_block
      for (b = 0; b < num_higher_protected_bits; b++)
          celp_frame[f][b]
                                                                                             1
      if (audio_info.CELP_CRC == 1)
          celp_crc_bits[f]
                                                                                             8
                                                                                                     see annex D
   // lower_protected_part
   for (f = 0; f < num\_frames; f++) {
      for (b = 0; b < num_lower_protected_bits; b++)
          celp_frame[f][num_higher_protected_bits + b]
                                                                                              1
   }
```

Table 10: UEP parameters for 8 kHz sampling CELP

CELP bit rate index	Bit rate (bits/s)	Audio frame length (ms)	Higher Protected Part (bits/audio frame)	Lower Protected Part (bits/audio frame)	Higher Protected Part (bytes/audio super frame)	Lower Protected Part (bytes/audio super frame)	Audio super frame length (bytes)
0	3 850	40	36	118	45	148	193 (see note)
1	4 250	40	36	134	45	168	213 (see note)
2	4 650	40	36	150	45	188	233 (see note)
6	5 700	20	24	90	60	225	285
7	6 000	20	24	96	60	240	300
8	6 300	20	24	102	60	255	315
9	6 600	20	24	108	60	270	330
10	6 900	20	24	114	60	285	345
11	7 100	20	24	118	60	295	355
12	7 300	20	24	122	60	305	365
13	7 700	20	36	118	90	295	385
14	8 300	20	36	130	90	325	415
15	8 700	20	36	138	90	345	435
16	9 100	20	36	146	90	365	455
17	9 500	20	36	154	90	385	475
18	9 900	20	36	162	90	405	495
19	10 300	20	36	170	90	425	515
20	10 500	20	36	174	90	435	525
21	10 700	20	36	178	90	445	535
22	11 000	10	24	86	120	430	550
23	11 400	10	24	90	120	450	570
24	11 800	10	24	94	120	470	590
25	12 000	10	24	96	120	480	600
26	12 200	10	24	98	120	490	610
NOTE: Fo	r these bit rate	es, the last four	r bits of the audi	o super frame a	re padded with 0s		

Table 11: UEP parameters for 16 kHz sampling CELP

CELP bit rate index	Bit rate (bits/s)	Audio frame length (ms)	Higher Protected Part (bits/audio	Lower Protected Part (bits/audio	Higher Protected Part (bytes/audio super frame)	Lower Protected Part (bytes/audio super frame)	Audio super frame length (bytes)
		()	frame)	frame)			
0	10 900	20	64	154	160	385	545
1	11 500	20	64	166	160	415	575
2	12 100	20	64	178	160	445	605
3	12 700	20	64	190	160	475	635
4	13 300	20	64	202	160	505	665
5	13 900	20	64	214	160	535	695
6	14 300	20	64	222	160	555	715
8	14 700	20	92	202	230	505	735
9	15 900	20	92	226	230	565	795
10	17 100	20	92	250	230	625	855
11	17 900	20	92	266	230	665	895
12	18 700	20	92	282	230	705	935
13	19 500	20	92	298	230	745	975
14	20 300	20	92	314	230	785	1 015
15	21 100	20	92	330	230	825	1 055
16	13 600	10	50	86	250	430	680
17	14 200	10	50	92	250	460	710
18	14 800	10	50	98	250	490	740
19	15 400	10	50	104	250	520	770
20	16 000	10	50	110	250	550	800
21	16 600	10	50	116	250	580	830
22	17 000	10	50	120	250	600	850
24	17 400	10	64	110	320	550	870
25	18 600	10	64	122	320	610	930
26	19 800	10	64	134	320	670	990
27	20 600	10	64	142	320	710	1 030
28	21 400	10	64	150	320	750	1 070
29	22 200	10	64	158	320	790	1 110
30	23 000	10	64	166	320	830	1 150
31	23 800	10	64	174	320	870	1 190

5.5 HVXC

The MPEG-4 HVXC (Harmonic Vector eXcitation Coding) speech coding toolset as defined in ISO/IEC 14496-3 [2] covers the compression and decoding of natural speech sound at bit rates of 2,0 kbit/s and 4,0 kbit/s. HVXC employs harmonic coding of LPC residual signals for voiced segments and Vector eXcitation Coding (VXC) for unvoiced segments. HVXC provides communications-quality to near-toll-quality speech in the 100 Hz to 3 800 Hz band at 8 kHz sampling rate. In addition, the functionality of pitch and speed change during decoding is supported. This functionality is useful for fast speech database search or browsing. HVXC has a syntax providing error sensitivity categories that can be used with an error protection tool. Additionally the error concealment functionality is supported for the use in error-prone channels.

DRM uses a subset of the HVXC description in ISO/IEC 14496-3 [2], limiting the syntax to the error resilient syntax given in ISO/IEC 14496-3/Amd 1 [3] and the data rates to the two options of 2,0 kbit/s and 4,0 kbit/s. Further, HVXC is used with the non-scalable syntax only. For robust decoding in error-prone channels a low-complexity error concealment tool (CRC and intra-frame interleaving) is defined specifically for DRM.

The syntax of the HVXC audio super frame is identical for all possible HVXC modes, since HVXC does not support UEP functionality and the length of a HVXC audio frame is always 20 ms.

Table 12: Syntax of hvxc_super_frame()

	No. of bits	Note	
hvxc_super_frame(audio_info) {	// audio info from the SDC		
num_frames = 20;			

The number of bits contained in one audio frame is given by the audio information from the SDC (HVXC_rate, HVXC_CRC).

In case the 4,0 kbit/s fixed rate HVXC coder is used with the CRC tool, the last 4 bits of each audio super frame are padded with zeros and the receiver shall ignore these bits. The resulting bit rate therefore is 4,66 kbit/s.

Only the fixed rate modes of HVXC (2,0 kbit/s or 4,0 kbit/s) shall be used in audio super frames. Variable rate modes shall only be applicable for use with packet mode applications and the variable bit rate syntax will be defined in conjunction with such data applications.

5.5.1 Definitions

5.5.1.1 HVXC source coder parameters

The definition of the basic data entities of a MPEG-4 compliant HVXC speech coding system is given in ISO/IEC 14496-3 [2] and is reproduced as table N.1 in annex N.

5.5.1.2 CRC bits for fixed bit rate modes

Table 13 describes the various CRC bits added for error protection in the DRM system.

Table 13: CRC bits for fixed bit rate modes

Parameter	Description	length (bits)
CRC0_2k	CRC bits for ESC0 at 2 kbit/s	6
CRC1_2k	CRC bits for ESC1 at 2 kbit/s	1
CRC2_2k	CRC bits for ESC2 at 2 kbit/s	1
CRC0_4k	CRC bits for ESC0 at 4 kbit/s	6
CRC1_4k	CRC bits for ESC1 at 4 kbit/s	5
CRC2_4k	CRC bits for ESC2 at 4 kbit/s	1
CRC3_4k	CRC bits for ESC3 at 4 kbit/s	1

5.5.2 HVXC decoder

Figure 6 shows the overall structure of the HVXC decoder. The basic decoding process is composed of four steps; de-quantization of parameters, generation of excitation signals for voiced frames by sinusoidal synthesis (harmonic synthesis) and noise component addition, generation of excitation signals for unvoiced frames by codebook look-up, and LPC synthesis. To enhance the synthesized speech quality spectral post-filtering is used.

For voiced frames, a fixed dimension harmonic spectral vector, obtained by de-quantization of the spectral magnitude, is first converted to the one having the original dimension which varies frame by frame in accordance with the pitch value. This is done by the dimension converter in which a band-limited interpolator generates a set of spectral magnitude values at harmonic frequencies without changing the shape of the spectral envelope. Using the spectral magnitude values, a time domain excitation signal is then generated by the fast harmonic synthesis algorithm using an IFFT. In order to make the synthesized speech sound natural, a noise component is additionally used. A Gaussian noise spectral component, covering 2 kHz to 3,8 kHz, is coloured in accordance with the harmonic spectral magnitudes in the frequency domain, and its IDFT is added to voiced excitation signals in the time domain. The amount and bandwidth of this additive noise is controlled by the transmitted two-bit V/UV value, which is encoded based on the normalized maximum autocorrelation of the LPC residual signal. Noise added harmonic excitation signals for voiced segments are then fed into the LPC synthesis filter followed by the postfilter.

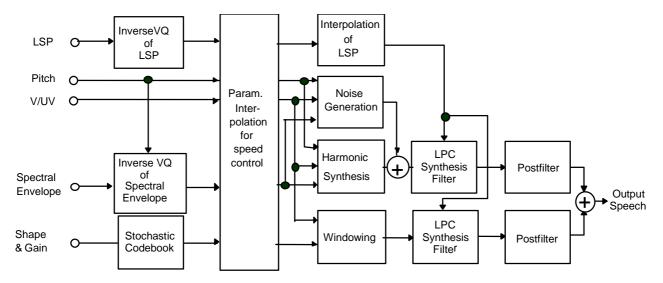


Figure 6: Block diagram of the HVXC decoder

For unvoiced segments, the usual VXC decoding algorithm is used where an excitation signal is generated by multiplying the gain value with the stochastic codevector. The result is then fed into the LPC synthesis filter followed by the postfilter. Finally, the synthesized speech components for voiced and unvoiced segments are added to form the output signal. The description of the time-scale modification standard can be found in the MPEG-4 [2].

5.5.3 HVXC encoder

Figure 7 shows the overall structure of the encoder of the MPEG-4 HVXC. Table N.2 of annex N shows the bit allocations for the 2,0 kbit/s and 4,0 kbit/s coders using fixed rate coding. The parameters followed by (enh) are used only for the 4,0 kbit/s mode. Operation of each part is described below.

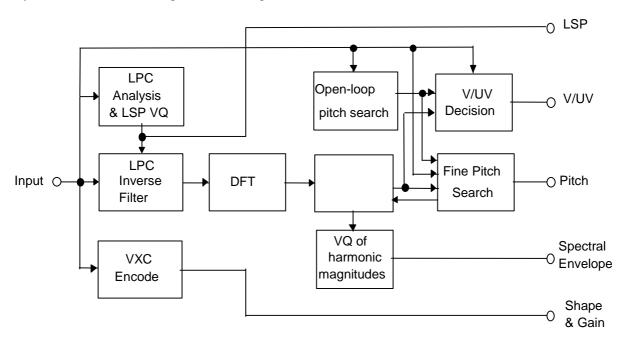


Figure 7: Block diagram of the HVXC encoder

5.5.3.1 LPC analysis and LSP quantization

The speech input at a sampling rate of 8 kHz is formed into frames with a length and interval of 256 samples and 160 samples, respectively. Tenth order LPC analysis is carried out using windowed input data over one frame. LPC parameters are converted to LSP parameters and vector quantized with a partial prediction and multi-stage vector quantization scheme. LPC residual signals are computed by inverse filtering the input data using quantized and interpolated LSP parameters.

5.5.3.2 Open loop pitch search

The open loop pitch value is estimated based on the peak values of the autocorrelation of the LPC residual signals. Using estimated past and current pitch values, pitch tracking is conducted to have a continuous pitch contour and to make the reliability of the pitch estimation higher. The voiced/unvoiced decision of the previous frame is also used to ensure the pitch tracking operation.

5.5.3.3 Harmonic magnitude and fine pitch estimation

The power spectrum of the LPC residual signal is then fed into the fine pitch and harmonic magnitude estimation block, where the harmonic spectral envelope of the LPC residual signal is estimated as follows: A basis spectrum representing one harmonic spectrum is gain scaled and arranged with the spacing of the fundamental frequency obtained by the open loop pitch search. The gain scaling for each harmonic and fundamental frequency is adjusted simultaneously so that the difference between the synthesized power spectrum and actual LPC residual spectrum is minimized. The harmonic spectral envelope for a voiced segment is then vector quantized.

5.5.3.4 Vector quantization of harmonic magnitudes

In order to vector quantize a spectral envelope composed of a variable number of harmonics, the harmonic spectral vector is first converted to a fixed-dimension vector. Band-limited interpolation by a polyphase filter bank is used for the dimensional conversion. A fixed-dimension spectral vector x is then quantized with weighted distortion measure D;

$$D = ||WH(x - g(s_0 + s_1))||^2$$

where \mathbf{s}_0 is the output of the first shape codebook, \mathbf{s}_1 is the output of the second shape codebook, and g is the output of the gain codebook. The diagonal components of the matrices \mathbf{H} and \mathbf{W} are the magnitudes of the frequency response of the LPC synthesis filter and the perceptual weighting filter, respectively. In order to reduce the memory requirements and search complexity while maintaining a high performance, two-stage vector quantization scheme is employed for the spectral shape together with a scalar quantizer for the gain under 2,0 kbit/s coding. For the 4,0 kbit/s mode, the quantized harmonic magnitude vector with fixed dimension is first converted to the dimension of original harmonics by the same band-limited interpolation mentioned above. The difference between the original harmonics and de-quantized and dimension converted harmonics are then quantized with additional vector quantizers. This multi-stage structure allows generation of scalable bit-streams.

5.5.3.5 Voiced/Unvoiced decision

The Voiced/Unvoiced decision is made based on the maximum autocorrelation of the LPC residual signals, the number of zero crossing and the harmonic structure of the power spectrum of the LPC residual signals.

5.5.3.6 VXC coding of unvoiced signals

For unvoiced segments, regular VXC coding is carried out, where only stochastic codebooks are used. A 6 bits shape codebook of dimension 80 and 4 bits gain codebook are used for the 2,0 kbit/s mode. For the 4,0 kbit/s mode, the quantization error of the 2,0 kbit/s mode is quantized using a 5 bits shape codebook of dimension 40 and a 3 bits gain codebook at the additional stage.

5.5.4 HVXC channel coding

5.5.4.1 Protected Bit Selection

According to the sensitivity of bits, encoded bits are classified to several Error Sensitivity Categories (ESC). The number of bits for each ESC is shown in table 14 (2,0 kbit/s, voiced sound), table 15 (2,0 kbit/s, unvoiced sound), table 16 (4,0 kbit/s, voiced sound) and table 17 (4,0 kbit/s, unvoiced sound). ESC0 is the group of the most error sensitive bits and ESC4 is the group of the least sensitive bits. Bit rate setting of total of 2,4 kbit/s using 2,0 kbit/s source coder rate, and total of 4,66 kbit/s using 4,0 kbit/s source coder rate are shown.

NOTE: The overall bit rate due to the usage of a CRC is 4,65 kbit/s, but additionally 4 padding bits have to be inserted for each audio super frame, resulting in an overall bit rate of 4,66 kbit/s, see clause 5.5.

Table 14: Number of ESC bits at 2,0 kbit/s fixed rate mode (voiced sound)

Parameters	Voiced frame				
	ESC0 (bits)	ESC1 (bits)	ESC2 (bits)	ESC3 (bits)	total (bits)
LSP1	5	-	-	-	5
LSP2	2	-	-	5	7
LSP3	1	-	-	4	5
LSP4	1	-	-	-	1
VUV	2	-	-	-	2
Pitch	6	-	-	1	7
SE_gain	5	-	-	-	5
SE_shape1	-	4	-	-	4
SE_shape2	-	-	4	-	4
total	22	4	4	10	40
CRC	6	1	1	-	8
total + CRC	28	5	5	10	48

Table 15: Number of ESC bits at 2,0 kbit/s fixed rate mode (unvoiced sound)

Parameters	Unvoiced frame				
	ESC0 (bits)	ESC1 (bits)	ESC2 (bits)	ESC3 (bits)	total (bits)
LSP1	5	-	-	-	5
LSP2	4	3	-	-	7
LSP3	2	1	2	-	5
LSP4	1	-	-	-	1
VUV	2	-	-	-	2
VX_gain1 [0]	4	-	-	-	4
VX_gain1 [1]	4	-	-	-	4
VX_shape1 [0]	-	-	2	4	6
VX_shape1 [1]	-	-	-	6	6
total	22	4	4	10	40
CRC	6	1	1	-	8
total + CRC	28	5	5	10	48

Table 16: Number of ESC bits at 4,0 kbit/s fixed rate mode (voiced sound)

Parameters	Voiced frame					
	ESC0 (bits)	ESC1 (bits)	ESC2 (bits)	ESC3 (bits)	ESC4 (bits)	total (bits)
LSP1	5	-	-	-	-	5
LSP2	4	-	-	-	3	7
LSP3	1	-	-	-	4	5
LSP4	1	-	-	-	-	1
LSP5	1	-	-	-	7	8
VUV	2	-	-	-	-	2
Pitch	6	-	-	-	1	7
SE_gain	5	-	-	-	-	5
SE_shape1	-	-	4	-	-	4
SE_shape2	-	-	-	4	-	4
SE_shape3	5	-	-	-	2	7
SE_shape4	1	9	-	-	-	10
SE_shape5	1	8	-	-	-	9
SE_shape6	1	5	-	-	-	6
Total	33	22	4	4	17	80
CRC	6	5	1	1	-	13
Total + CRC	39	27	5	5	17	93

Table 17: Number of ESC bits at 4,0 kbit/s fixed rate mode (unvoiced sound)

Parameters	Unvoiced frame					
	ESC0 (bits)	ESC1 (bits)	ESC2 (bits)	ESC3 (bits)	ESC4 (bits)	total (bits)
LSP1	5	-	-	-	-	5
LSP2	4	3	-	-	-	7
LSP3	1	4	-	-	-	5
LSP4	1	-	-	-	-	1
LSP5	1	7	-	-	-	8
VUV	2	-	-	-	-	2
VX_gain1 [0]	4	-	-	-	-	4
VX_gain1 [1]	4	-	-	-	-	4
VX_shape1 [0]	-	6	-	-	-	6
VX_shape1 [1]	-	1	4	1	-	6
VX_gain2 [0]	3	-	-	-	-	3
VX_gain2 [1]	3	-	-	-	-	3
VX_gain2 [2]	3	-	-	-	-	3
VX_gain2 [3]	2	1	-	-	-	3
VX_shape2 [0]	-	-	-	3	2	5
VX_shape2 [1]	-	-	-	-	5	5
VX_shape2 [2]	-	-	-	-	5	5
VX_shape2 [3]	-	-	-	-	5	5
total	33	22	4	4	17	80
CRC	6	5	1	1	-	13
total + CRC	39	27	5	5	17	93

5.5.4.2 Syntax of DRM HVXC error resilience (ErHVXCfixframe_CRC)

The bitstream syntax consists of several Error Sensitivity Categories (ESC). Some ESCs include source bits and CRC bits, where CRC bits are computed from source bits within the same ESC.

The HVXC_CRC field in the SDC is used to indicate whether the stream includes CRC parity bits or not (see clause 6.4.3.10). The bitstream syntax of the input of the CRC checker is given in figure 8.

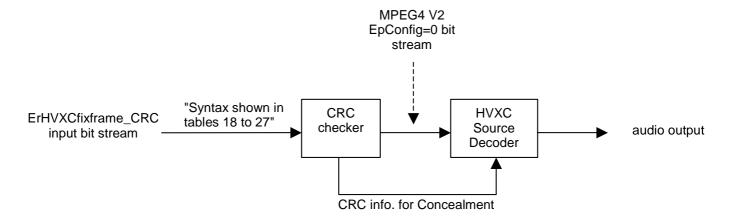


Figure 8: Block Diagram of HVXC Syntax

Table 18: Syntax of ErHVXCfixframe_CRC()

Table 19: Syntax of 2k_ESC0_CRC0()

Syntax	No. of bits	Mnemonic
2k_ESC0_CRC0()		
VUV , 1-0;	2	uimsbf
LSP4, 0;	1	uimsbf
if (VUV!=0) {		
SE_gain, 4-0;	5	uimsbf
LSP1, 4-0;	5	uimsbf
Pitch, 6-1;	6	uimsbf
LSP2, 6;	1	uimsbf
LSP3, 4;	1	uimsbf
LSP2, 5;	1	uimsbf
} else {		
VX_gain1[0], 3-0;	4	uimsbf
VX_gain1[1], 3-0;	4	uimsbf
LSP1, 4-0;	5	uimsbf
LSP2, 6-3;	4	uimsbf
LSP3, 4-3;	2	uimsbf
}	_	
if (HVXC_CRC==1) {		
CRC0_2k, 5-0;	6	uimsbf
}	•	4111001
J		

Table 20: Syntax of 2k_ESC1_CRC1()

Syntax	No. of bits	Mnemonic
2k_ESC1_CRC1()		
· ·		
if (VUV!=0) {		
SE_shape1, 3-0;	4	uimsbf
} else {		
LSP2, 2-0;	3	uimsbf
LSP3, 2;	1	uimsbf
}		
if (HVXC_CRC==1) {		
CRC1_2k, 0;	1	uimsbf
}		
<u> </u>		

Table 21: Syntax of 2k_ESC2_CRC2()

Syntax	No. of bits	Mnemonic
2k_ESC2_CRC2()		
\ {		
if (VUV!=0) {		
SE_shape2, 3-0;	4	uimsbf
}		
else {		
LSP3, 1-0;	2	uimsbf
VX_shape1[0], 5-4;	2	uimsbf
}		
if (HVXC_CRC==1) {		
CRC2_2k, 0;	1	uimsbf
}		
]}		

Table 22: Syntax of 2k_ESC3_NoCRC()

Table 23: Syntax of 4k_ESC0_CRC0()

Syntax	No. of bits	Mnemonic
4k_ESC0_CRC0()		
{		
VUV , 1-0;	2	uimsbf
LSP4, 0;	1	uimsbf
if (VUV!=0) {		
SE_gain, 4-0;	5	uimsbf
LSP1, 4-0;	5	uimsbf
Pitch, 6-1;	6	uimsbf
LSP2, 6-3;	4	uimsbf
SE_shape3, 6-2;	5	uimsbf
LSP3, 4;	1	uimsbf
LSP5, 7;	1	uimsbf
SE_shape4, 9;	1	uimsbf
SE_shape5, 8;	1	uimsbf
SE_shape6, 5;	1	uimsbf
} else {		
VX_gain1[0], 3-0;	4	uimsbf
VX_gain1[1], 3-0;	4	uimsbf
LSP1, 4-0;	5	uimsbf
LSP2, 6-3;	4	uimsbf
LSP3, 4;	1	uimsbf
LSP5, 7;	1	uimsbf
VX_gain2[0], 2-0;	3	uimsbf
VX_gain2[1], 2-0;	3	uimsbf
VX_gain2[2], 2-0;	3	uimsbf
VX_gain2[3], 2-1;	2	uimsbf
}		
if (HVXC_CRC==1) {		
CRC0_4k, 5-0;	6	uimsbf
}		
}		

Table 24: Syntax of 4k_ESC1_CRC1()

Syntax	No. of bits	Mnemonic
4k_ESC1_CRC1()		
[{		
if (VUV!=0) {		
SE_shape4, 8-0;	9	uimsbf
SE_shape5, 7-0;	8	uimsbf
SE_shape6, 4-0;	5	uimsbf
} else {		
VX_gain2[3], 0;	1	uimsbf
LSP2, 2-0;	3	uimsbf
LSP3, 3-0;	4	uimsbf
LSP5, 6-0;	7	uimsbf
VX_shape1[0], 5-0;	6	uimsbf
VX_shape1[1], 5;	1	uimsbf
}		
if (HVXC_CRC==1) {		
CRC1_4k, 4-0;	5	uimsbf
}		
}		

Table 25: Syntax of 4k_ESC2_CRC2()

Syntax	No. of bits	Mnemonic
4k_ESC2_CRC2()		
[{		
if (VUV!=0) {		
SE_shape1, 3-0;	4	uimsbf
} else {		
VX_shape1[1], 4-1;	4	uimsbf
}		
if (HVXC_CRC==1) {		
CRC2_4k, 0;	1	uimsbf
}		
) · ·		

Table 26: Syntax of 4k_ESC3_CRC3()

Syntax	No. of bits	Mnemonic
4k_ESC3_CRC3()		
[{		
if (VUV!=0) {		
SE_shape2, 3-0;	4	uimsbf
} else {		
VX_shape1[1], 0;	1	uimsbf
VX_shape2[0], 4-2;	3	uimsbf
}		
if (HVXC_CRC==1) {		
CRC3_4k, 0;	1	uimsbf
}		
}		

Table 27: Syntax of 4k_ESC4_NoCRC()

```
No. of bits
                              Syntax
                                                                                      Mnemonic
4k_ESC4_NoCRC()
   if (VUV!=0) {
      LSP2, 2-0;
                                                                            3
                                                                                    uimsbf
      LSP3, 3-0;
                                                                            4
                                                                                    uimsbf
      LSP5, 6-0;
                                                                            7
                                                                                    uimsbf
                                                                            1
      Pitch, 0;
                                                                                    uimsbf
      SE_shape3, 1-0;
                                                                            2
                                                                                    uimsbf
   } else {
      VX_shape2[0], 1-0;
                                                                            2
                                                                                    uimsbf
                                                                            5
      VX_shape2[1], 4-0;
                                                                                    uimsbf
      VX_shape2[2], 4-0;
                                                                            5
                                                                                    uimsbf
      VX_shape2[3], 4-0;
                                                                                    uimsbf
```

5.5.5 Category Interleaving

In order to improve the robustness of the bitstream to channel errors, bit interleaving is carried out where data bits are reordered inside one frame. Bit interleaving is carried out after the bitstream is ordered and the CRC bits are added as shown in tables 18 to 27. The interleaving is done in two steps. First, the HVXC bitstream is divided into two sequences as:

- $x[0..N_1-1]$: sequence consists of bits of ESC0 where N_1 is the number of bits included in ESC0.
- $y[0..N_2-1]$: sequence consists of bits other than ESC0.

The sequence y[] is composed of ESC1, ESC2 ..., in this order. N_1 is the number of bits of ESC0, and N_2 is the number of bits other than ESC0. The total number of bits is $N = N_1 + N_2$. r is defined as:

$$r = \frac{N}{N_1}$$

Next, the sequences x[] and y[] are interleaved into one sequence z[0..N-1]. Every single bit from x[] is inserted at the beginning of every $\lfloor r \rfloor - 1$ or $\lfloor r \rfloor$ bits from y[], where $\lfloor r \rfloor$ is the largest integer less than or equal to r. The flowchart is shown below in figure 9.

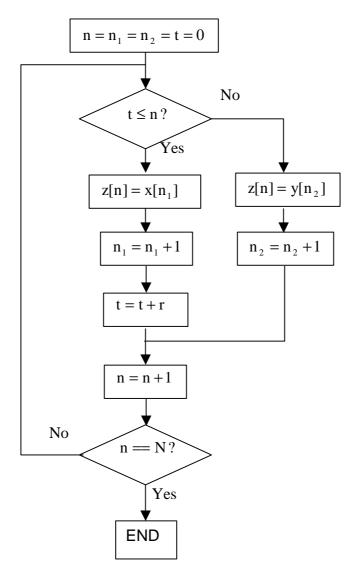


Figure 9: Flowchart of class interleaving method

5.5.6 HVXC error detection and concealment

5.5.6.1 Cyclic Redundancy Code (CRC)

The CRC parity bits are computed from the source bits in the same ESC. A schematic diagram of the CRC checker, the polynomials and initialization procedure is given in annex D.

5.5.6.2 Error concealment

In case a CRC error is detected, error concealment processing (bad frame masking) is carried out in the HVXC decoder. The state transition diagram of the concealment processing is shown in figure 10. A frame masking state of the current frame is updated based on the decoded CRC result of ESC0. If a CRC error is detected in ESC0, the frame is declared to be a "bad" frame. The initial state of the state transition diagram is state = 0. The arrow with a letter "1" denotes the transition for a bad frame, and that with a letter "0" the one for a good frame. At the 2,0 kbit/s rate ESC1 and ESC2 are protected by CRC bits; at the 4,0 kbit/s ESC1 to ESC3 are protected by CRC bits. The results of the CRC checks against these ESCs are used to maintain toll quality as described in detail below.

5.5.6.2.1 Parameter replacement

According to the state value, the following parameter replacement is done. In error free condition, the state value becomes 0, and received source coder bits are used without any concealment processing.

LSP parameters

At state = 1...6, LSP parameters are replaced with those of previous states. At state = 7, if LSP4 = 0 (LSP quantization mode without inter-frame prediction), then LSP parameters are calculated from all LSP indices received in the current frame. If LSP4 = 1 (LSP quantization mode with inter-frame coding), then LSP parameters are calculated with the following method, where LSP parameters belonging to the LSP1 index are interpolated with the previous LSPs.

$$LSP_{base}(n) = p \times LSP_{prev}(n) + (1-p) \times LSP_{1st}(n) \text{ for } n = 1...10$$
 (1)

 $LSP_{base}(n)$ is LSP parameters of the base layer, $LSP_{prev}(n)$ is the decoded LSPs of the previous frame, $LSP_{1st}(n)$ is the decoded LSPs from the current LSP1 index, and p is the interpolation factor. p is changed according to the number of previous bad frames as shown in table 28. LSP indices LSP2, LSP3 and LSP5 are not used, and $LSP_{base}(n)$ computed according to the Equation (1) is used as current LSP parameters.

Table 28: p factor

frame	р
0	0,7
1	0,6
2	0,5
3	0,4
4	0,3
5	0,2
6	0,1
7	0,0

Mute variable

According to the "state" value, a variable "mute" is set to control the output level of the reproduced speech. The "mute" values in table 29 are used. At state = 7, the average of 1,0 and "mute" value of the previous frame (= 0.5 (1.0 + previous "mute value")) is used. However, when this value is more than 0,8, "mute" value is replaced with 0,8.

Table 29: Mute value

state	mute value	
0	1,0	
1	0,8	
2	0,7	
3	0,5	
4	0,25	
5	0,125	
6	0,0	
7	average/0,8	

Replacement and gain control of "voiced" parameters

At state = 1...6, spectrum parameter SE_shape1, SE_shape2, spectrum gain parameter SE_gain, spectrum parameter for 4,0 kbit/s mode SE_shape3 ... SE_shape6 are replaced with the corresponding parameters of the previous frame. Also, to control the volume of the output speech and the harmonic magnitude parameters of LPC residual signal, "Am[0...127]" is gain controlled as shown in equation (2). In the equation, $Am_{(org)}[i]$ is computed from the received spectrum parameters of the latest error free frame.

$$Am[i] = mute \times Am_{(org)}[i] \text{ for } i = 0...127$$
(2)

If the previous frame is unvoiced and the current state is state = 7, equation (2) is replaced with equation (3);

$$Am[i] = 0.6 \times mute \times Am_{(org)}[i] \text{ for } i = 0...127$$
 (3)

As described before, SE_shape1 and SE_shape2 are individually protected by 1 bit CRCs. ESC1 applies to SE_shape1 and ESC2 applies to SE_shape2 at 2,0 kbit/s. In the same way, ESC2 applies to SE_shape1 and ESC3 applies to SE_shape2 at 4,0 kbit/s. At state = 0 or 7, if both of the CRCs of SE_shape1 and SE_shape2 are in error at the same time, the quantized harmonic magnitudes with fixed dimension $Am_{ant}[1..44]$ are gain suppressed as:

$$Am_{ant}[i] = s[i] \times Am_{ant(org)}[i] \text{ for } i = 1...44$$
(4)

s[i] is the factor for the gain suppression. $Am_{qnt(org)}[i]$ is the fixed dimension harmonic magnitudes generated using the SE_shape1 and SE_shape2 which contains bit errors. $Am_{qnt}[i]$ is then dimension converted to obtain Am[i].

Table 30: Factor for gain suppression, s[0...44]

1	i	1	2	3	4	5	6	744
	s[i]	0,10	0,25	0,40	0,55	0,70	0,85	1,00

At 4,0 kbit/s, SE_shape4, SE_shape5, and SE_shape6 are subject to CRC checking as ESC1. When a CRC error is detected, the spectrum parameter of the enhancement layer is not used.

Replacement and gain control of "unvoiced" parameters

At state = 1...6, the stochastic codebook gain parameters VX_gain1[0] and VX_gain1[1] are replaced with the previous frame's VX_gain1[1]. Also the stochastic codebook gain parameters for the 4,0 kbit/s mode VX_gain2[0]...VX_gain2[3] are replaced with the previous frame's VX_gain2[3].

The stochastic codebook shape parameters VX_shape1[0], VX_shape1[1] and the stochastic codebook shape parameters for the 4,0 kbit/s mode VX_shape2[0], VX_shape2[1], VX_shape2[2] and VX_shape2[3] are generated from randomly generated index values.

Finally, in order to control the volume of the output speech, the LPC residual signal res[0...159] is gain controlled as shown in equation (5). $res_{(org)}[i]$ is the excitation signal obtained by using the stochastic codebook gain and the shape parameters generated as explained above.

$$res[i] = mute \times res_{(org)}[i] \quad (0 \le i \le 159)$$
(5)

Frame Masking State Transitions

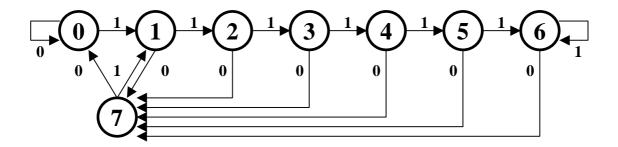


Figure 10: Frame Masking State Transitions

5.6 SBR

5.6.1 Conceptual overview

Spectral Band Replication (SBR) is an audio coding enhancement tool. It improves the performance of low bit rate audio and speech codecs. SBR can increase the bandwidth of a conventional low bit rate codec to equal or exceed the analogue FM audio bandwidth (15 kHz), see figure 11. This can be achieved within the low bit rates available from DRM. SBR can also improve the performance of narrow-band speech codecs, offering the broadcaster 12 kHz commentary audio bandwidth, used for example for multilingual broadcasting. As most speech codecs are narrowband, SBR is important not only for improving speech quality, but also for improving speech intelligibility and speech comprehension. SBR is mainly a post-process, although some pre-processing is performed in the encoder in order to guide the decoding process.

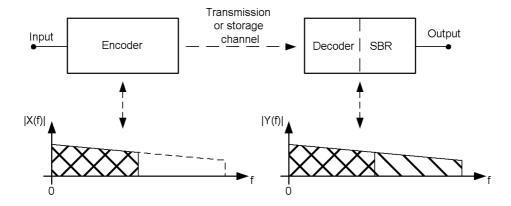


Figure 11: The SBR source coding system

The human voice and most musical instruments generate quasi-stationary excitation signals that emerge from oscillating systems. The wide-band excitation spectrum is created by for example vocal cords, strings or reeds etc and its frequency components form a harmonic series. The harmonic series is filtered by resonators such as the vocal tract, violin body etc., giving the voice or musical instrument its characteristic tone colour or timbre. A bandwidth limitation of such a signal is equivalent to a truncation of the harmonic series, see figure 12. Such a truncation alters the perceived timbre and the audio signal sounds "muffled" or "dull", and the intelligibility may be reduced.

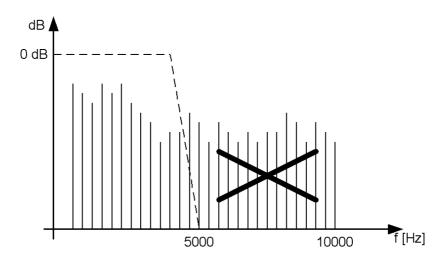


Figure 12: Example of band-limiting of a typical signal

The SBR concept postulates that a truncated harmonic series can be extended based on the relation between lowband and highband spectral components. The spectral envelope, i.e. the coarse spectral distribution, of the replicated highband, must resemble that of the original signal. This is assured by transmitting spectral envelope guidance information from the encoder to decoder at a very low bit rate (approximately 2 kbit/s/channel).

It is important to maintain the ratio between harmonic and noise-like components in the replicated highband. This makes it necessary to selectively add noise components to the SBR replicated high-band.

Two different bit stream protocols are used, one for use with AAC, and one for use with CELP. They are described in the clauses below.

5.6.2 AAC + SBR Decoding Process

The input to the SBR decoder is the SBR bitstream data and the decoded time domain signal from the AAC decoder, which is sampled at half the rate of the output signal. The decoded low-band time domain signal is fed to an analysis QMF bank, as shown in figure 13. The subband signals obtained from the filter bank are re-routed by an LC-repatching algorithm to reconstruct the high-band. Using the envelope information derived from the transmitted SBR bitstream a gain adjustment within the filter bank scalefactor bands is performed on the high-band subband signals. The adjusted high-band and the delay compensated low-band are then fed to the common synthesis QMF bank which generates the wide-band time domain output signal.

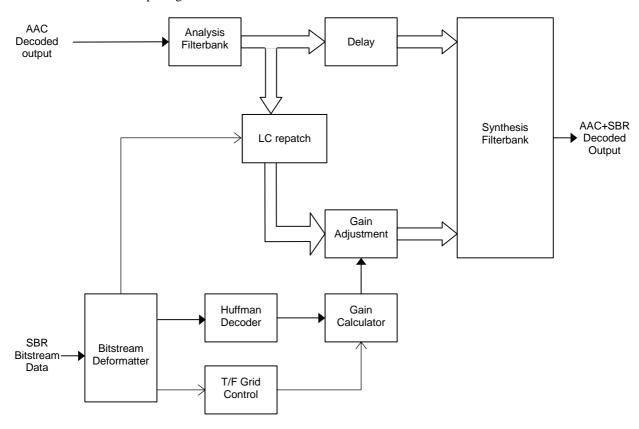


Figure 13: Flow Diagram of the AAC-SBR Decoding Process

5.6.2.1 Analysis Filterbank

Subband filtering of the AAC decoded time domain signal is achieved using a 32-channel QMF bank. The flowchart of figure 14(a) shows the operation. The window coefficients are given in annex I, table I.1. For every loop in the flowchart, the output is 32 subband samples, each representing the output from one filterbank channel. For every frame the filterbank will produce 30 subband samples for every channel, corresponding to a time domain signal of length 960 samples.

5.6.2.2 Synthesis Filterbank

Synthesis filtering of the delayed subband samples and the gain-adjusted subband samples is accomplished using a 64-channel complex QMF bank. The operation is shown in the flowchart of figure 14(b), and the window coefficients are the same as for the analysis bank and tabulated in annex I, table I.1. The delayed subband samples are fed to the lowest 32 channels. The real-valued gain-adjusted subband samples are fed to channels corresponding to higher frequencies. The output for every frame is 1 920 time domain samples.

5.6.2.3 Gain Control

The steps involved for one cycle of the gain control unit, corresponding to one frame, is shown in the flowchart of figure 15. First, an energy calculation of the subband samples is performed, i.e. the squared absolute values of the complex-valued subband samples is computed. The energy samples are subsequently combined within segments being the same as the segments used in the encoder for the current part of the signal. This combination produces the envelope samples $nrg_est[i]$, where i=0,1,...,nNrg-1. The envelope data transmitted from the encoder is decoded and dequantized, thus restoring $nrg_erf[i]$, where i=0,1,...,nNrg-1. The calculation of gainfactors is then performed by taking the square-root of the ratios of the energy values $nrg_erf[i]$ and $nrg_est[i]$ with compensation for the noise floor level; $gain[i] = sqrt \{ nrg_erf[i]/(nrg_est[i] \times (1+ns_evel[i])) \}$, for i=0,1,...,nNrg-1. The real part of the subband samples in the segments is multiplied with the corresponding gainfactor, thus adjusting several frequency- and time-adjacent subband samples with one gainfactor. The noise floor level data transmitted from the encoder is decoded and dequantized, which restores and maps the nNoiseNrg values to nNrg noise floor level values, $ns_evel[i]$, where i=0,1,...,nNrg-1. Finally, random white noise is added to the subband samples using the noise level data, i.e. the noise energy will be $nrg_eref[i] \times ns_evel[i]/(1+ns_evel[i])$.

5.6.2.4 T/F Grid Control

As stated above, the envelope estimates are obtained by adaptive grouping of subband-samples of a fixed-size filterbank into time- and frequency-regions, for each of which one envelope sample is calculated. The description of those frequency bands and time segments is referred to as a T/F-grid. Clearly, in order to perform the above described gain adjustment, this grid must be transmitted to the decoder. The frequency bands are defined by table-pairs that are stored in both the encoder and the decoder. Such a pair corresponds to high and low frequency resolution respectively, in the sense that more or fewer frequency bands are used. The frequency resolution is selectable on a per-segment basis, and signalled correspondingly to the decoder. The time segment boundaries, referred to as borders, are selected according to the input signal properties, whereby longer segments are used during quasi-stationary passages, and smaller steps in time are used in the vicinity of transients. Again, those borders must be signalled to the decoder. Four frame classes are defined, and the bitstream signals are tailored towards the specific needs of each class. Class "FixFix" corresponds to conventional constant length granules. Class "FixVar" has a movable stop boundary, which allows the frame length to vary. Class "VarFix" has a variable start boundary, whereas the stop border is fixed. The last class, "VarVar", has variable boundaries at both ends. The class is signalled, and, except for class FixFix, followed by the position of the variable boundary(/-ies). Thus, those signals define the frame start and stop boundaries. The borders within a frame are signalled by means of relative distances from the variable boundaries. The noise samples are defined and signalled in a similar manner. The task of the T/F-Grid Control module is to reassemble the grid from the above described bitstream elements.

5.6.2.5 Huffman Decoder

The envelope and noise samples are quantized and delta coded, either in the frequency or time direction, and the direction chosen is signalled to the decoder. The delta values are Huffman coded, and the codewords are transmitted to the decoder. Obviously, the task of the Huffman Decoder module is to reconvert the codewords into the quantized envelope and noise samples generated at the encoder.

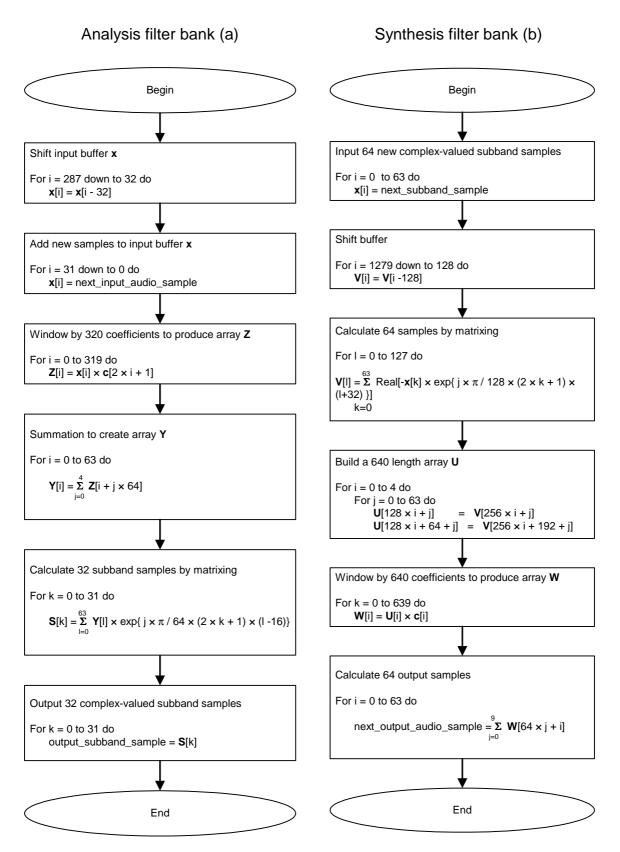


Figure 14: Flow Chart of the Analysis (a) and Synthesis (b) filter bank

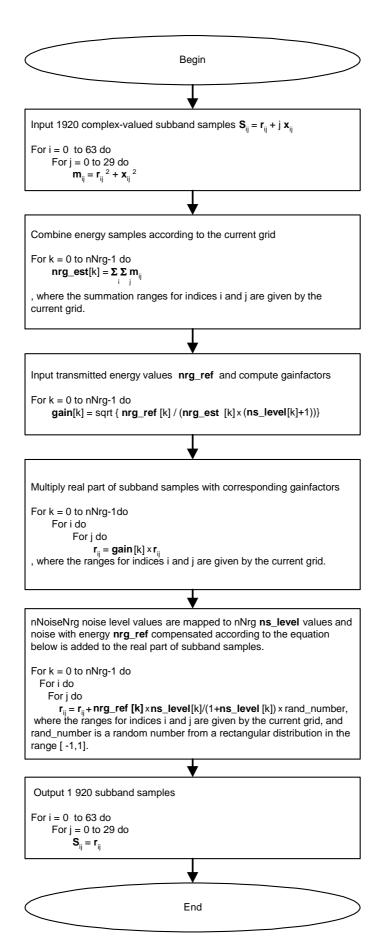


Figure 15: Flow Chart of the Gain Control Module

5.6.3 AAC + SBR Protocol

The SBR bitstream is described by means of pseudo code, using a syntax similar to the one used in the MPEG standard documents. The location of the SBR bitstream within the AAC audio super frames was described in clause 5.3.2. This clause only describes how to extract the elements from the bitstream. The application thereof was briefly described in clause 4.

5.6.3.1 AAC + SBR syntax

Table 31: Syntax of sbr_aac_frame()

Syntax		No. of bits	Note
sbr_aac_frame(audio_mode) { sbr_crc_bits if (header_flag)	// audio_mode is located in the SDC	8 1	see annex D
sbr_header (audio_mode) sbr_data (audio_mode, data extra) }	// data extra is located in sbr_header		

Table 32: Syntax of sbr_header()

	Syntax	No. of bits	Note
sbr_header (audio_mode)			
{ protocol_version		2	
amp_res		1	
start_frequency		4	
stop_frequency		4	
xover_band		3	
reserved		2	
data_extra	// enable optional data part	1	
header_extra_1	// enable optional header part 1	1	
header_extra_2	// enable optional header part 2	1	
// optional parts if (header_extra_1) {			
freq_scale		2	
alter_scale		1	
noise_bands		2	
}			
if (header_extra_2) {			
limiter_bands		2	
limiter_gains		2	
		1	
interpol_freq		<u> </u>	
smoothing_mode		1	
		1 1	

Table 33: Syntax of sbr_data()

```
sbr_data (audio_mode, data_extra)
{

if (audio_mode != STEREO) {

sbr_single_channel_element (data_extra)

}
else {

sbr_channel_pair_element (data_extra)

}
}
```

Table 34: Syntax of sbr_single_channel_element ()

```
No. of bits
                                                                                                             Note
                                        Syntax
sbr_single_channel_element (data_extra)
   // side info
   sbr_grid (0)
   sbr_dtdf (0)
                                  // data delta coding direction
   invf_mode
                                                                                                2
   sbr_mode
   if (data_extra)
      reserved
                                                                                                3
   // raw data
   sbr_envelope (0,0)
   sbr_noise (0,0)
   // sbr extended data
   if (extended_data) {
      cnt = extension_size
                                         // cnt is value in bytes
                                                                                                4
      if (cnt = 15) {
          cnt += esc_count;
                                                                                                8
      extension_id
                                                                                                2
      sbr_extension([extension_id])
   }
```

Table 35: Syntax of sbr_channel_pair_element ()

```
Syntax
                                                                                          No. of bits
                                                                                                            Note
sbr_channel_pair_element (data_extra)
   if (coupling) {
                                                                                                1
      // side info
      sbr_grid (0)
                           // grid common to both channels
      num_env[1] = num_env[0]; num_noise[1] = num_noise[0]
      for(env = 0; env < num_env[0]; env++)
          freq_res[1][env] = freq_res[0][env]
                                      // mono data delta coding direction
       sbr_dtdf (0)
       sbr_dtdf (1)
                                      // stereo data delta coding direction
      invf_mode
      sbr_mode
                                                                                               2
      if (data_extra)
          reserved
                                                                                                3
      // raw data
      sbr_envelope (0,1)
                                      // mono data
      sbr_noise (0,1)
                                      // mono data
       sbr_envelope (1,1)
                                      // stereo data
      sbr_noise (1,1)
                                      // stereo data
```

```
No. of bits
                                      Syntax
                                                                                                           Note
   // sbr extended data, to be used for both channels
   if (extended_data) {
                                                                                              1
       cnt = extension_size
                                           // cnt is value in bytes
                                                                                              4
       if (cnt = 15) {
    cnt += esc_count;
                                                                                              8
       extension id
                                                                                              2
       sbr_extension([extension_id])
   }
else
      {
   // side info
                         // left grid
   sbr_grid (0)
    sbr_grid (1)
                         // right grid
   sbr_dtdf (0)
                                    // left data delta coding direction
                                    // right data delta coding direction
    sbr_dtdf (1)
   invf_mode
                                    // left mode
                                                                                              2
   invf_mode
                                    // right mode
                                                                                              2
                                    // left SBR mode bits
   sbr_mode
   sbr_mode
                                    // right SBR mode bits
                                                                                              2
   if (data_extra)
       reserved
                                                                                              6
   // raw data
   sbr_envelope (0,0)
                                    // left data
   sbr_envelope (1,0)
                                    // right data
   sbr_noise (0,0)
                                    // left data
   sbr_noise (1,0)
                                    // right data
   // sbr extended data, left channel
   if (extended_data) {
       cnt = extension_size
                                           // cnt is value in bytes
                                                                                               4
       if (cnt = 15) {
           cnt += esc_count;
                                                                                              8
                                                                                              2
       extension_id
       sbr_extension([extension_id])
   }
   // sbr extended data, right channel
   if (extended_data) {
       cnt = extension_size
                                           // cnt is value in bytes
       if (cnt = 15) {
           cnt += esc_count;
                                                                                              8
       extension_id
                                                                                              2
   sbr_extension([extension_id])
}
```

Table 36: Syntax of sbr_grid()

Syntax	No. of bits	Note
sbr_grid (ch)		
{ switch (frame_class) {	2	
case FIXFIX	•	
num_env[ch] = 2 ^temp // number of envelopes freq_res // frame global frequency resolution	2 1	
for(env = 0; env < num_env[ch]; env++)		
freq_res[ch][env] = freq_res; break;		
case FIXVAR		
// mandatory part:	2	
abs_bord[ch] = temp + number_time_slots	3 2	
num_env[ch] = num_rel[ch] + 1 // number of envelopes		
for(rel = 0; rel < num_rel[ch]; rel++) rel_bord[ch][rel] = 2*temp + 2; // relative borders, last to first	2	
ptr_bits = ceil (ln (num_rel[ch] + 2)/ln (2)) // number of pointer bits		
pointer[ch]	ptr_bits	
for(env = 0; env < num_env[ch]; env++)	4	
freq_res[ch][num_env[ch] - 1 - env] = freq_res; // last to first	1	
break;		
case VARFIX // mandatory part:		
abs_bord[ch] // first border	3	
num_rel[ch] //number of relative borders	2	
num_env[ch] = num_rel[ch] + 1 //number of envelopes for(rel = 0; rel < num_rel[ch]; rel++)		
rel_bord[ch][rel] = 2*temp + 2; // relative borders, first to last	2	
ptr_bits = ceil (ln (num_rel[ch] + 2)/ln (2)) // number of pointer bits pointer[ch]	ptr_bits	
powerfung	P	
for(env = 0; env < num_env[ch]; env++)	_	
freq_res[ch] [env] = freq_res ;// freq resolutions, first to last	1	
break;		
case VARVAR // mandatory part:		
abs_bord_0[ch] // first border	3	
abs_bord_1[ch] = temp + number_time_slots // last border	3	
num_rel_0[ch] //number of relative borders, first to last num_rel_1[ch] //number of relative borders, last to first	2 2	
num_env[ch] = num_rel_0[ch] + num_rel_1[ch] + 1 //number of env		
for(rel = 0; rel < num_rel_0[ch]; rel++) rel_bord_0[ch][rel] = 2*temp + 2; // relative borders, first to last	2	
for(rel = 0; rel < num_rel_1[ch]; rel++)	_	
rel_bord_1[ch][rel] = 2^* temp + 2; // relative borders, last to first	2	
ptr_bits = ceil (ln (num_rel_0[ch] + num_rel_1[ch] + 2)/ln (2)) // ptr bits pointer[ch]	ptr_bits	
	-	
for(env = 0; env < num_env[ch]; env++)		
freq_res[ch] [env] = freq_res ; // freq resolutions, first to last	1	
break;		
if(num_env[ch] > 1)		
num_noise[ch] = 2 // number noise floors Else		
num_noise[ch] = 1		
}		
U		

Table 37: Syntax of sbr_dtdf ()

```
        Syntax
        No. of bits
        Note

        sbr_dtdf (ch)
        {
        for(env; env < num_env[ch]; env++)</td>
        1

        df_env[ch][env] = df_env_flag;
        1

        for(noise; noise < num_noise[ch]; noise++)</td>
        1

        df_noise[ch][env] = df_noise_flag;
        1

        }
        1
```

Table 38: Syntax of sbr_envelope ()

```
No. of bits
                                                                                                           Note
                                        Syntax
sbr_envelope (ch,coupling)
   // Huffman table selection
   if(coupling)
       if(ch)
      {
          t_huff = t_huffman_env_stereo;
          f_huff = f_huffman_env_stereo;
      else
          t_huff = t_huffman_env_mono;
          f_huff = f_huffman_env_mono;
      }
   else
      t huff = t huffman env;
      f_huff = f_huffman_env;
   }
   // raw data extraction
   for(env = 0; env < num_env[ch]; env++)
      if(df_env[ch][env])
          if(coupling && ch)
             data_env[ch][env][0] = env_start_value_stereo;
                                                                                              5/6
                                                                                                       amp_res=1/
                                                                                                       amp_res=0
          else
             data_env[ch][env][0] = env_start_value_mono;
                                                                                              6/7
                                                                                                       amp_res=1/
                                                                                                       amp_res=0
          for(band = 1; band < num_env_bands[freq_res[ch][env]]; band++)</pre>
             data_env[ch][env][band] = huff_dec(f_huff,codeword);
                                                                                             1...18
      }
      else
          for(band = 0; band < num_env_bands[freq_res[ch][env]]; band++)</pre>
             data_env[ch][env][band] = huff_dec(t_huff,codeword);
                                                                                             1...18
      }
   }
```

Table 39: Syntax of sbr_noise ()

```
Syntax
                                                                                           No. of bits
                                                                                                            Note
sbr_noise (ch,coupling)
   // Huffman table selection
   if(coupling)
      if(ch)
          t_huff = t_huffman_noise_stereo;
          f_huff = f_huffman_noise_stereo;
      }
      else
          t_huff = t_huffman_noise_mono;
          f_huff = f_huffman_noise_mono;
   else
          t_huff = t_huffman_noise;
          f_huff = f_huffman_noise;
   }
   // raw data extraction
   for(noise = 0; noise < num_noise[ch]; noise++)</pre>
       if(df_noise[ch][noise])
          if(coupling && ch)
             data_noise[ch][noise][0] = noise_start_value_stereo;
                                                                                               5
          else
             data_noise[ch][noise][0] = noise_start_value_mono;
                                                                                               5
          for(band = 1; band < num_noise_bands[freq_res[ch][noise]]; band++)
             data_noise[ch][noise][band] = huff_dec(f_huff,codeword);
                                                                                             1...18
      }
      else
          for(band = 0; band < num_noise_bands[freq_res[ch][noise]]; band++)
             data_noise[ch][noise][band] = huff_dec(t_huff,codeword);
                                                                                             1...18
      }
   }
```

5.6.3.2 SBR bit stream element definitions

sbr_crc_bits

Cyclic redundancy checksum for the SBR bit stream part. The CRC algorithm is applied to the first crc_len number of bits after the sbr_crc_bits as defined by table 40. *fkn* is defined as count = frame_length - num_codec_bits, whereas num_codec_bits is the number of bits consumed by the core coder (AAC).

Table 40: Number of bits covered by the CRC

audio_mode	header_flag	No. of bits
MONO	1	crc_len = min(74, fkn(count))
MONO	0	crc_len = min(47, fkn(count))
LC_STEREO	1	crc_len = min(76, fkn(count))
LC_STEREO	0	crc_len = min(47, fkn(count))
STEREO	1	crc_len = min(120, fkn(count))
STEREO	0	crc len = min(93, fkn(count))

header_flag Indicates if a SBR header is present.

protocol_version Defines the version of the SBR protocol as given by table 41.

Table 41: Definition of protocol version

protocol_version	Version	Note
0	DRM SBR Bitstream Format V 1.0	As defined by the present document
1	reserved	
2	reserved	
3	reserved	

amp_res

Defines the resolution of the envelope estimates as given by table 42.

Table 42: Definition of amp_res

amp_res	Meaning	Note
0	1,5 dB	
1	3,0 dB	

start_frequency Index to describe the lower boundary of the frequency range covered by SBR.

stop_frequency Index to describe the upper boundary of the frequency range covered by SBR.

xover_band Index to describe the crossover frequency between AAC and SBR.

Decoding of start_frequency and stop_frequency yields the values of num_env_bands[2], the number of frequency bands for the envelope samples (low and high frequency resolution respectively), and num_noise_bands, the number of frequency bands for the noise-floor samples, which are used in the subsequent extraction of bitstream elements.

The QMF channel which represents the crossover channel between the spectrum covered by AAC and SBR is given by qmf_freq_band_table [xover_band], whereas the qmf_freq_band_table[] itself is dependent on freq_scale, alter_scale, start_frequency and stop_frequency

Table 43: Start_frequency chart (fs = 48 000)

Index	Frequency (Hz)
0	4 125
1	4 500
2	4 875
3	5 250
4	5 625
5	6 000
6	6 375
7	6 750
8	7 500
9	8 250
10	9 000
11	10 125
12	11 625
13	13 125
14	14 625
15	16 500

Table 44: Stop_frequency chart (fs = 48 000)

Index	Frequency (Hz)
0	7 875
1	8 625
2	9 375
3	10 125
4	10 875
5	12 000
6	13 125
7	14 250
8	15 375
9	16 875
10	18 375
11	20 250
12	22 125
13	24 000
14	2 × f0
15	3 × f0

Table 45: Definition of xover_band

xover_band	Description	Note
0-7	Index to qmf_freq_band_table []	
0-7	index to qiii_neq_band_table []	

data_extraIndicates whether the optional data part is enabled.header_extra_1Indicates whether the optional header part 1 is enabled.header_extra_2Indicates whether the optional header part 2 is enabled.lc_stereo_modeDefines the low complexity stereo mode behaviour as given by table 46.

Table 46: Definition of lc_stereo_mode

lc_stereo_mode	Meaning	Note
0	Off	
1	Level 1	
2	Level 2	
3	Level 3	

freq_scale

Defines the frequency envelope bands grouping scale as given by table 47.

Table 47: Definition of freq_scale

freq_scale	Scale	Note
0	Linear	
1	12 bands/octave	
2	10 bands/octave	
3	8 bands/octave	

alter_scale

Further defines the frequency envelope bands grouping as given by table 48.

Table 48: Definition of alter_scale

alter_scale	Action for freq_scale = 0	Action for freq_scale > 0
0	no grouping of channels	no alteration
1	groups of 2 channels	extra wide bands in highest range

noise_bands

Defines the number of noise bands as given by table 49.

Table 49: Definition of noise_bands

noise_bands	Meaning	Note
0	1 band	
1	1 band/octave	
2	2 band/octave	
3	3 band/octave	

limiter_bands

Defines the number of limiter bands as given by table 50.

Table 50: Definition of limiter_bands

limiter_bands	Meaning	Note
0	1 band	single band
1	1,3 bands/octave	multi-band
2	2,0 bands/octave	multi-band
3	2,6 bands/octave	multi-band

limiter_gains

Defines the maximum gain of the limiters as given by table 51.

Table 51: Definition of limiter_gains

limiter_gains	Max Gain [dB]	Note
0	-3	
1	0	
2	3	
3	infinite (i.e. limiter off)	

interpol_freq Defines if the frequency interpolation shall be applied as given by table 52.

Table 52: Definition of interpol_freq

interpol_freq	Meaning	Note
0	Off	
1	On	

smoothing_mode Defines if smoothing shall be applied as given by table 53.

Table 53: Definition of smoothing_mode

smoothing_mode	Meaning	Note
0	On	
1	Off	

invf_mode Defines how inverse filtering shall be applied as given by table 54.

Table 54: Definition of invf_mode

invf_mode	Meaning	Note
0	no inverse filtering	
1	low level inverse filtering	
2	intermediate inverse filtering	
3	strong inverse filtering	

sbr_mode Defines the SBR algorithm to be used as given by table 55.

Table 55: Definition of sbr_mode

sbr_mode	Meaning	Note
0	reserved	use SBR-LC in V1.0
1	reserved	use SBR-LC in V1.0
2	SBR-LC	
3	reserved	use SBR-LC in V1.0

extended_data Indicates whether an SBR extended data element is present. Defines the size of the SBR extended date element in bytes. extension_size esc_count Further defines the size of the SBR extended data element in cases where the size is bigger than 14 bytes. Holds an ID of the SBR extended data element. extension_id coupling Indicates whether the stereo information between the two channels is coupled or not. frame_class Indicates the framing class of the current frame. freq_res Indicates the frequency resolution. Indicates the number of relative borders within the time grid information for the current num_rel frame. Points to a border within the time grid. pointer abs_bord Indicates the location of the variable border within the time grid. df_env_flag Indicates whether to apply delta decoding of the envelope samples in time or frequency direction.

Table 56: Definition of df_env_flag

df_env_flag	Meaning	Note
0	Apply delta decoding in time direction	
1	Apply delta decoding in frequency direction	

df_noise_flagIndicates whether to apply delta decoding of the noise samples in time or frequency direction.

Table 57: Definition of df_noise_flag

df_noise_flag	Meaning	Note
0	Apply delta decoding in time direction	
1	Apply delta decoding in frequency direction	

env_start_value_stereo Holds the first envelope value in case of a coupled stereo bit stream.

env_start_value_mono Holds the first envelope value in case of a non-coupled stereo or a mono bit stream.

noise_start_value_stereo Holds the first noise value in case of a coupled stereo bit stream.

noise_start_value_mono Holds the first noise value in case of a non-coupled stereo or a mono bit stream.

6 Multiplex definition

6.1 Introduction

The DRM transmission super frame consists of three channels: the Main Service Channel (MSC), the Fast Access Channel (FAC), and the Service Description Channel (SDC). The MSC contains the data for the services. The FAC provides information on the channel width and other such parameters and also provides service selection information to allow for fast scanning. The SDC gives information on how to decode the MSC, how to find alternative sources of the same data, and gives the attributes of the services within the multiplex. It can include links to analogue simulcast services.

6.2 Main Service Channel

6.2.1 Introduction

The main service channel (MSC) contains the data for all the services contained in the DRM multiplex. The multiplex may contain between one and four services, and each service may be either audio or data. The gross bit rate of the MSC is dependent upon the DRM channel bandwidth and the transmission mode.

6.2.2 Structure

The MSC contains between one and four streams. Each stream is divided into logical frames each 400 ms long. Audio streams comprise compressed audio and optionally they can carry text messages. Data streams may be composed of up to four "sub-streams" consisting of data packets. A sub-stream carries packets for one service. An audio service comprises one audio stream and optionally one data stream or one data sub-stream. A data service comprises one data stream or one data sub-stream.

Each logical frame generally consists of two parts, each with its own protection level. The lengths of the two parts are independently assigned. Unequal error protection for a stream is provided by setting different protection levels to the two parts. The logical frames from all the streams are mapped together to form multiplex frames of 400 ms duration which are passed to the channel coder. Alternatively, the first stream may be carried in logical frames mapped in to hierarchical frames.

The multiplex configuration is signalled using the SDC. The multiplex may be reconfigured at transmission super frame boundaries.

Annex M contains some examples of different MSC configurations.

6.2.3 Building the MSC

The MSC consists of a sequence of multiplex frames, and if hierarchical modulation is in use a sequence of hierarchical frames also. The multiplex frames and hierarchical frames are passed separately to the channel coder.

6.2.3.1 Multiplex frames

The multiplex frames are built by placing the logical frames from each non-hierarchical stream together. The logical frames consist, in general, of two parts each with a separate protection level. The multiplex frame is constructed by taking the data from the higher protected part of the logical frame from the lowest numbered stream (stream 0 when hierarchical modulation is not used, or stream 1 when hierarchical modulation is used) and placing it at the start of the multiplex frame. Next the data from the higher protected part of the logical frame from the next lowest numbered stream is appended and so on until all streams have been transferred. The data from the lower protected part of the logical frame from the lowest numbered stream (stream 0 when hierarchical modulation is not used, or stream 1 when hierarchical modulation is used) is then appended, followed by the data from the lower protected part of the logical frame from the next lowest numbered stream, and so on until all streams have been transferred. The higher protected part is designated part A and the lower protected part is designated part B in the multiplex description.

The multiplex frame will be larger than or equal to the sum of the logical frames from which it is formed. The remainder, if any, of the multiplex frame shall be filled with 0s. These bits shall be ignored by the receiver.

6.2.3.2 Hierarchical frames

The hierarchical frames only exist when hierarchical modulation is used. They are built by taking the data from the logical frame from stream 0 and placing it at the start of the hierarchical frame.

The hierarchical frame will be larger than or equal to the logical frame from which it is formed. The remainder, if any, of the hierarchical frame shall be filled with 0s. These bits shall be ignored by the receiver.

6.2.4 Reconfiguration

A reconfiguration of the multiplex occurs when the channel parameters in the FAC are changed, or when the services in the multiplex are reorganized. The new configuration is signalled ahead of time in the SDC and the timing is indicated by the reconfiguration index in the FAC. Clause 6.4.6 describes the signalling of a reconfiguration.

6.3 Fast Access Channel

6.3.1 Introduction

The FAC is used to provide service selection information for fast scanning. It contains information about the channel parameters (for example the spectrum occupancy and interleaving depth) such that a receiver is able to begin to decode the multiplex effectively. It also contains information about the services in the multiplex to allow the receiver to either decode this multiplex or change frequency and search again.

6.3.2 Structure

Each transmission frame contains an FAC block. An FAC block contains parameters that describe the channel and parameters to describe one service along with a CRC. When more than one service is carried in the multiplex, a number of FAC blocks are required to describe all the services.

6.3.3 Channel parameters

The channel parameters are as follows:

-	Base/Enhancement flag	1 bit
-	Identity	2 bits
-	Spectrum occupancy	4 bits
-	Interleaver depth flag	1 bit
-	MSC mode	2 bits
-	SDC mode	1 bit
-	Number of services	4 bits
-	Reconfiguration index	3 bits
-	rfu	2 bits

The following definitions apply:

Base/Enhancement flag: this 1-bit flag indicates whether the transmission will be the base or enhancement layer as follows:

0: Base layer - decodable by all DRM receivers

1: Enhancement layer - only decodable by receivers with enhancement layer capabilities

Identity: this 2-bit field identifies the current frame and also validates the SDC AFS index (see clause 6.4) as follows:

00: first FAC of the transmission super frame and AFS index is valid

01: second FAC of the transmission super frame

10: third FAC of the transmission super frame

11: first FAC of the transmission super frame and AFS index is invalid

Spectrum occupancy: this 4-bit field specifies the configuration of the digital signal. See clause 8.

Interleaver depth flag: this 1-bit flag indicates the depth of the time interleaving as follows:

0: 2 s (long interleaving)

1: 400 ms (short interleaving)

MSC mode: this 2-bit field indicates the modulation mode in use for the MSC as follows:

00: 64-QAM, no hierarchical

01: 64-QAM, hierarchical on I

10: 64-QAM, hierarchical on I&Q

11: 16-QAM, no hierarchical

SDC mode: this 1-bit field indicates the modulation mode in use for the SDC as follows:

0: 16-QAM

1: 4-QAM

60

Number of services: this 4-bit field indicates the number of audio and data services as follows:

0000: 4 audio services

0001: 1 data service

0010: 2 data services

0011: 3 data services

0100: 1 audio service

0101: 1 audio service and 1 data service

0110: 1 audio service and 2 data services

0111: 1 audio service and 3 data services

1000: 2 audio services

1001: 2 audio services and 1 data service

1010: 2 audio services and 2 data services

1011: reserved

1100: 3 audio services

1101: 3 audio services and 1 data service

1110: reserved

1111: 4 data services

Reconfiguration index: this 3-bit field shall indicate the status and timing of a multiplex reconfiguration. A non-zero value shall indicate the number of transmission super frames before the new configuration will take effect, see clause 6.4.6.

rfu: these 2 bits are reserved for future use and shall be set to zero until they are defined.

6.3.4 Service parameters

The service parameters are as follows:

-	Service identifier	24 bits
-	Short identifier	2 bits
-	CA indication	1 bit
-	Language	4 bits
-	Audio/Data flag	1 bit
-	Service descriptor	5 bits
-	Rfa	7 bits

The following definitions apply:

Service identifier: this 24-bit field indicates the unique identifier for this service.

Short Id: this 2-bit field indicates the short identifier assigned to this service and used as a reference in the SDC. The Short Id is assigned for the duration of the service and is maintained through multiplex reconfigurations.

CA indication: this 1-bit flag indicates whether the service uses conditional access as follows:

0: No CA system is used

1: CA system is used

NOTE 1: The details are provided by the SDC data entity type 2.

Language: this 4-bit field indicates the language of the target audience as defined in table 58.

NOTE 2: Further languages are also indicated by SDC data entity type 12.

Audio/Data flag: this 1-bit flag indicates whether the service is audio or data as follows:

0: Audio service

1: Data service

Service descriptor: this 5-bit field shall depend upon the value of the Audio/Data flag as follows:

0: Programme type

1: Application identifier

Programme type: this 5-bit field indicates the programme type of an audio service as defined in table 59.

Application identifier: this 5-bit field indicates the application identifier of a data service as defined in TS 101 968. The value 0 indicates that the application details are provided solely by SDC data entity type 5.

Rfa: these 7 bits shall be reserved for future additions and shall be set to zero until they are defined.

Table 58: Language codes

Decimal Number	Language	Decimal Number	Language
0	No language specified	8	Hindi
1	Arabic	9	Japanese
2	Bengali	10	Javanese
3	Chinese (Mandarin)	11	Korean
4	Dutch	12	Portuguese
5	English	13	Russian
6	French	14	Spanish
7	German	15	Other language

Table 59: Programme Type codes

Decimal Number	Programme type	Decimal Number	Programme type	
0	No programme type	16	Weather/meteorology	
1	News	17	Finance/Business	
2	Current Affairs	18	Children's programmes	
3	Information	19	Social Affairs	
4	Sport	20	Religion	
5	Education	21	Phone In	
6	Drama	22	Travel	
7	Culture	23	Leisure	
8	Science	24	Jazz Music	
9	Varied	25	Country Music	
10	Pop Music	26	National Music	
11	Rock Music	27	Oldies Music	
12	Easy Listening Music	28	Folk Music	
13	Light Classical	29	Documentary	
14	Serious Classical	30	Not used	
15	Other Music	31	Not used	

6.3.5 CRC

The 8-bit Cyclic Redundancy Check shall be calculated on the channel and service parameters. It shall use the generator polynomial $G_8(x) = x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + I$. See annex D.

6.3.6 FAC repetition

The FAC channel parameters shall be sent in each FAC block. The FAC service parameters for one service shall be sent in each block. When there is more than one service in the multiplex the repetition pattern is significant to the receiver scan time. When all services are of the same type (e.g. all audio or all data) then the services shall be signalled sequentially. When a mixture of audio and data services is present then the patterns shown in table 60 shall be signalled.

Table 60: Service parameter repetition patterns for mixtures of audio and data services

Number of audio services	Number of data services	Repetition pattern
1	1	A1A1A1D1
1	2	A1A1A1A1D1A1A1A1A1D2
1	3	A1A1A1A1D1A1A1A1A1D2A1A1A1A1D3
2	1	A1A2A1A2D1
2	2	A1A2A1A2D1A1A2A1A2D2
3	1	A1A2A3A1A2A3D1

Where An designates an audio service and Dn designates a data service.

6.4 Service Description Channel

6.4.1 Introduction

This clause describes the format and content of the SDC. The SDC gives information on how to decode the MSC, how to find alternative sources of the same data, and gives attributes to the services within the multiplex.

The data capacity of the SDC varies with the spectrum occupancy of the multiplex and other parameters. The SDC capacity can also be increased by making use of the AFS index.

Alternative frequency checking may be achieved, without loss of service, by keeping the data carried in the SDC quasi-static. Therefore, the data in the SDC frames has to be carefully managed.

When using hierarchical modulation, the SDC will be coded using 4-QAM.

6.4.2 Structure

An SDC block is the SDC data contained in one transmission super frame.

The SDC is treated as a single data channel. The total amount of data to be sent may require more than a single SDC block to send. An AFS index is therefore provided to permit a receiver to know when the next occurrence of the current SDC block will be transmitted, and so allow for alternative frequency checking and switching (AFS). A validity function is provided in the FAC to indicate whether the AFS index is valid or not, indicating to a receiver when the AFS function can operate.

The SDC block is made up as follows:

- AFS index 4 bits

- data field *n* bytes

- CRC 16 bits

The **AFS index** is an unsigned binary number in the range 0 to 15 that indicates the number of transmission super frames which separate this SDC block from the next with identical content when the identity field in the FAC is set to 00. The AFS index shall be identical for all SDC blocks. The AFS index may be changed at reconfiguration.

The **data field** carries a variable number of data entities. It may contain an end marker and padding. The length of the data field depends upon the robustness mode, SDC mode and spectrum occupancy, and is given in table 61.

Length of data field (bytes) Robustness **SDC** mode Spectrum Occupancy mode 0 1 4 5 2 3 Α 0 37 43 85 97 184 207 17 20 41 47 91 102 1 В 76 143 0 28 33 66 161 13 32 37 70 79 15 С 0 68 147 72 32 0 33 78 D 15 38

Table 61: Length of SDC data field

The CRC (Cyclic Redundancy Check) field shall contain a 16-bit CRC calculated over the AFS index coded in an 8-bit field (4 msbs are 0) and the data field. It shall use the generator polynomial $G_{16}(x) = x^{16} + x^{12} + x^5 + 1$. See annex D.

6.4.3 Data Entities

The data field is filled with data entities. Every data entity has a 12-bit header and a variable length body. The header has the following format:

length of body
version flag
data entity type
4 bits

The following definitions apply:

Unique:

The **length of body** gives the number of whole bytes occupied by the data entity body.

The **version flag** controls the management of data in the receiver.

The **data entity type** is a number that determines the identity of the data entity.

The version flag allows three different mechanisms to control data management in the receiver, as specified below. The actual mechanism used is specified for each data entity.

Reconfiguration: For data entities using this mechanism, the version flag indicates whether the data is for the

current (=0) or next (=1) configuration.

List: For data entities using this mechanism, the version flag indicates the version of the list. When

any of the data in the list changes, the flag is inverted and the existing data in the receiver is

discarded. The version flag applies to all the data delivered using the data entity type.

For data entities using this mechanism, the version flag has no meaning and shall be set to 0.

These data entities carry data that is unique and therefore do not require any change

mechanism:

The body of the data entities shall be at least 4 bits long. The length of the body, excluding the initial 4 bits, shall be signalled by the header.

When there is space remaining in the data field, a data end marker shall be sent. The data end marker shall be 0x00. Any remaining space shall be filled with padding. The padding shall take the value 0x00.

6.4.3.1 Multiplex description data entity - type 0

Each SDC block should contain a multiplex description entity. This data entity uses the reconfiguration mechanism for the version flag. The current configuration can always be signalled. During a reconfiguration (i.e. when the FAC reconfiguration index is non-zero) the next configuration shall be signalled. This data entity describes the multiplex of streams within the MSC. The information is as follows:

- protection level for part A 2 bits

- protection level for part B 2 bits

- stream description for stream 0 24 bits

and optionally, dependent upon the number of streams in the multiplex:

- stream description for stream 1 24 bits

- stream description for stream 2 24 bits

- stream description for stream 3 24 bits

The stream description for stream 0 depends on whether the MSC mode field of the FAC indicates that the hierarchical frame is present or not.

If the hierarchical frame is not present then the stream description is as follows:

- data length for part A 12 bits

- data length for part B 12 bits

If the hierarchical frame is present then the stream description is as follows:

- protection level for hierarchical 2 bits

- rfu 10 bits

- data length for hierarchical 12 bits

The stream descriptions for streams 1, 2 and 3, when present, are as follows:

- data length for part A 12 bits

- data length for part B 12 bits

The following definitions apply:

protection level for part A: this field gives the overall coding rate for data in part A (see clause 7.5.1).

protection level for part B: this field gives the overall coding rate for data in part B (see clause 7.5.1).

data length for part A: this field gives the net length of data in bytes in part A of the MSC frame used by this stream.

data length for part B: this field gives the net length of data in bytes in part B of the MSC frame used by this stream.

protection level for hierarchical: this field gives the overall coding rate for data in the hierarchical frame (see clause 7.5.1).

rfu: these 10 bits shall be reserved for future use by the stream description field and shall be set to zero until they are defined.

data length for hierarchical: this field gives the net length of data in bytes in the hierarchical part of the MSC frame used by this stream.

When equal error protection is allocated to the multiplex frame (i.e. only one protection level is used) then the data length for the part A fields shall be set to 0 and the protection level for part A fields shall be set to 0.

When unequal error protection is allocated to the multiplex frame then the part A shall be the higher protected part and part B shall be the lower protected part.

NOTE: The receiver may determine the number of streams present in the multiplex by dividing the length field of the header by three.

6.4.3.2 Label data entity - type 1

Services may be labelled. The label should be sent in every SDC block to enable fast display, although for data services the repetition rate can be lowered. This data entity uses the unique mechanism for the version flag. The information is as follows:

Short Id
rfu
label
bits
bits
bytes

The following definitions apply:

short Id: this field contains the short Id that relates the information to the Service Id provided by the FAC.

rfu: these 2 bits shall be reserved for future use and shall be set to zero until they are defined.

label: this is a variable length field of up to 16 bytes defining the label using UTF-8 coding.

NOTE: The length of the label is given by the length field of the header.

6.4.3.3 Conditional access parameters data entity - type 2

This data entity allows the conditional access parameters to be sent. This data entity uses the reconfiguration mechanism for the version flag.

Short Id 2 bits
rfu 2 bits
CA system identifier 8 bits
CA system specific information n bytes

The following definitions apply:

Short Id: this field contains the short Id that relates the information to the Service Id provided by the FAC.

rfu: these 2 bits shall be reserved for future use and shall be set to zero until they are defined.

CA system identifier: this field indicates the CA system used by this service.

CA system specific information: this is a variable length field containing CA system specific data.

6.4.3.4 Frequency information data entity - type 3

A service may be available on several DRM frequencies. The Frequency information data entity allows these frequencies to be signalled. This data entity uses the list mechanism for the version flag.

Frequency information can also be provided for other services. These may be DRM services or carried on AM, FM, or DAB [4].

Frequency information is grouped by geographical area. The areas are common for all services signalled in a DRM multiplex, whether they are actually carried in the multiplex or not. The geographical areas can be described by using the Region definition data entity.

The frequency information may be essentially static (i.e. the same frequencies are used 24 hours per day) or may vary according to the time of day. In the latter case the Frequency schedule data entity is also used.

Service linking is provided by the Linkage data entity. This allows the connection between a service carried in the DRM multiplex and any alternative sources of the service, whether they be carried on DRM, AM, FM-RDS or DAB.

The information is as follows:

list type flagsystem id3 bits

- list type field 4 bits

- total number of frequency groups, m 4 bits

- m frequency groups

Each frequency group is coded as follows:

- group Id 4 bits

- number of frequencies, *n* 4 bits

- *n* frequencies $n \times (8 \text{ or } 16) \text{ bits}$

The following definitions apply:

List type flag: this flag indicates whether the information is static or scheduled as follows:

0: static frequency information

1: scheduled frequency information

System id: this field indicates which broadcast system the frequency information applies to as follows:

000: DRM: alternative frequencies for this entire multiplex

001: DRM: frequencies for a service carried in another multiplex (and AM simulcasts of that service)

010: FM-RDS service (Europe and North America grid)

011: FM-RDS service (Asia grid)

100: DAB service

101: reserved

110: reserved

111: reserved

List type field: this field depends upon the value of the list type flag as follows:

List type flag = 0:

when System id = 000:

rfa 3 bits

enhancement flag 1 bit

when System id = 001

ShortId 2 bits

Announce flag 1 bit

rfa 1 bit

when System id = 010, 011, 100

ShortId 2 bits

rfa 2 bits

List type flag = 1: Freq List Id 4 bits

rfa: these 1, 2 or 3 bits shall be reserved for future additions by the list type field and shall be set to zero until they are defined.

enhancement flag: this flag indicates whether the frequency information which follows is related to the base layer or the enhancement layer channel as follows:

- 0: information refers to the base layer channel
- 1: information refers to the enhancement layer channel

Short Id: this field contains the short Id for the service that the frequency information which follows refers to.

Announce flag: this flag indicates whether the frequency information which follows is related to the tuned service or to the announcement service as follows:

- 0: information refers to the tuned service; the ShortId provides the link to the ServiceId contained in the FAC
- 1: information refers to the announcement service; the ShortId provides the link via data entity type 6 to the ServiceId of the announcement service

Freq list Id: this field indicates the identity of the frequency list. Up to 16 separate frequency lists may be specified.

total number of frequency groups: this field, coded as an unsigned binary number, shall indicate the total number of frequency groups in this list - 1, even if the groups are carried in more than one data entity. Between 1 and 16 frequency groups may be specified per service or frequency list.

group Id: this field indicates an identifier for the following set of frequencies.

number of frequencies: this field, coded as an unsigned binary number, shall indicate the number of frequency fields -1 which follow.

frequency: the frequency field depends upon the value of the system id field as follows:

System id field	identifier field	field length
000	DRM/AM frequency	16 bits
001	DRM/AM frequency	16 bits
010	FM1 frequency	8 bits
011	FM2 frequency	8 bits
100	DAB frequency	8 bits

DRM/AM frequency: this consists of the following fields:

- analogue/digital flag 1 bit (0 = DRM, 1 = analogue)

- frequency in kHz 15 bits

NOTE: When System Id = 000, the analogue/digital flag shall be set to 0.

FM1 (87,5 MHz - 107,9 MHz) frequency:

code meaning

0 - 204: FM frequencies 87,5 MHz - 107,9 MHz (100 kHz step)

255 FM available, frequency not signalled

FM2 (76,0 - 90,0 MHz) frequency:

code meaning

0 - 140: FM frequencies 76,0 MHz - 90,0 MHz (100 kHz step)

FM available, frequency not signalled

DAB [4] frequency:

code meaning

0 - 11: DAB channels 2A - 4D (Band I)

64 - 95: DAB channels 5A - 12D (Band III)

96 - 101: DAB channels 13A - 13F (Band III +)

128 - 140: DAB channels (L-Band, European grid)

160 - 182: DAB channels (L-Band, Canadian grid)

255: DAB available, frequency not signalled

Use of frequency groups

The coverage area of the DRM multiplex shall be divided into one or more geographic areas. The areas may overlap at their edges or they may be distinct. Transmissions that are receivable within each area are signalled as members of the same group.

6.4.3.5 Frequency schedule data entity - type 4

This entity allows a frequency schedule to be transmitted. This data entity uses the list mechanism for the version flag. This information is as follows:

- Short Id 2 bits
- enhancement flag 1 bit
- day code 7 bits
- start time 11 bits
- end time 11 bits

The following definitions apply:

frequency list Id

Short Id: this field indicates the short Id for the service concerned.

4 bits

enhancement flag: this flag indicates whether the frequency list applies to the base layer or the enhancement layer channel as follows:

0: information refers to the base layer channel

1: information refers to the enhancement layer channel

day code: this field indicates which days the frequency schedule applies to. The msb indicates Monday, the lsb Sunday.

start time: this field indicates the time from when the frequency is valid. The time is expressed in hours (5 bits) and minutes (six bits) in UTC.

end time: this field indicates the time until when the frequency is valid. The time is expressed in hours (5 bits) and minutes (six bits) in UTC.

frequency list Id: this field indicates the frequency list which applies.

6.4.3.6 Application information data entity - type 5

All data services (or data applications for audio services) are described by this data entity. Many applications may require additional data to describe them that is specific to that application. This data entity uses the reconfiguration mechanism for the version flag. The content will be described by the appropriate application specification. The general form of the entity is as follows:

Short Id 2 bits
Stream Id 2 bits
Packet mode indicator 1 bit

- descriptor 7 or 15 bits

- application data n bytes

The following definitions apply:

Short Id: this field indicates the short Id for the service concerned.

Stream Id: this field indicates the stream Id of the stream which carries the data service (or data application) concerned.

Packet mode indicator: this field indicates whether the service is carried in packet mode or not as follows:

0: synchronous stream mode

1: packet mode

descriptor: the format of this field depends upon the value of the Packet mode indicator field as follows:

when **Packet mode indicator** = 0:

- rfa 7 bits

rfa: these 7 bits shall be reserved for future additions and shall be set to zero until they are defined.

when **Packet mode indicator** = 1:

- data unit indicator 1 bit
- packet Id 2 bits
- application domain 4 bits
- packet length 8 bits

data unit indicator: this field indicates whether the data stream is composed of single packets or data units as follows:

0: single packets

1: data units

packet Id: this field indicates the Packet Id carried in the header of packets intended for this service.

application domain: this field indicates the source of the data application specification as follows:

0: DRM specified application

1: DAB specified application

2-15: reserved

packet length: this field indicates the length in bytes of the data field of each packet specified as an unsigned binary number (the total packet length is three bytes longer as it includes the header and CRC fields).

NOTE: All packets contained in one data stream shall have the same length (see clause 6.6.4).

application data: this field of variable length is defined by the data service (or data application) specification.

When the application domain carries the value 1, the application data field shall be made up as follows:

rfu 5 bits

user application identifier 11 bits

- data fields as required by DAB application specification

rfu: these 5 bits shall be reserved for future use by the application data field and shall be set to zero until they are defined.

user application identifier: the value specified in TS 101 756 [10].

6.4.3.7 Announcement support and switching entity - type 6

This feature indicates which types of announcements are supported by the tuned multiplex or by another multiplex. This data entity uses the unique mechanism for the version flag. The following information is necessary:

Short Id 2 bits

rfu 1 bit

same/other multiplex 1 bit

- Announcement support flags 8 bits

- Announcement switching flags 8 bits

- if "same/other multiplex" = other: Service Id 24 bits

The following definitions apply:

Short Id: this field contains the short Id that relates the information to the Service Id provided by the FAC.

rfu: this bit shall be reserved for future use and shall be set to zero until defined.

Same/other multiplex: this flag shall signal if the announcements are provided by a service in the multiplex being received or by a service in another multiplex, as follows:

0: multiplex being received

1: Other multiplex

Announcement support flags: this 8-bit field specifies the types of announcements that are provided by this service, either directly or by vectoring to another service, as follows:

 B_i (i = 0,...,7)

0: Announcement type not provided.

1: Announcement type provided.

The meaning of each bit shall be as follows:

b₀: Travel

b₁: News flash

b₂: Weather flash

b₃: Warning/Alarm

b₄ - b₇: reserved for future definition

Announcement switching flags: this 8-bit field specifies the announcement types that apply to the announcement. The individual bits indicate whether or not a particular announcement type is signalled. The flags are coded as follows:

$$B_i$$
 ($i = 0,...,7$)

0: Announcement type not valid

1: Announcement type valid

The meaning of each bit shall be as defined for the Announcement support flags above.

Service Id: if the announcements are provided by another multiplex, this 24-bit field signals the Service Identifier.

6.4.3.8 Region definition data entity - type 7

A frequency group can be given a geographical area. This data entity uses the list mechanism for the version flag. The area is defined in terms of multiples of 1×1 degree "squares". It therefore gives a resolution of (EW \times NS) 111 km \times 111 km (at equator) or 31 km \times 111 km at 70° latitude (e.g. Scandinavia, Canada). The coding provided allows for the signalling of squares of up to about 4 000 km \times 4 000 km for < 73° latitude. The area may in addition be defined in terms of CIRAF zones. Up to seven zones may be specified per group.

-	group Id	4 bits
-	number of zones, n	3 bits
-	latitude	8 bits
-	longitude	9 bits
-	latitude extent	5 bits
-	longitude extent	7 bits
_	n CIRAF zones	$n \times 8$ bits

The following definitions apply:

Group Id: this field indicates an identifier for a set of frequencies.

number of zones: this field, coded as an 8 bit unsigned binary number, specifies the number of CIRAF zones to follow in the range 0 to 7

Latitude: this field specifies the southerly point of the area in degrees, as a 2's complement number

Longitude: this field specifies the westerly point of the area in degrees, as a 2's complement number

Latitude extent: this field specifies the size of the area to the north, in 1 degree steps

Longitude extent: this field specifies the size of the area to the east, in 1 degree steps

CIRAF zone: this field, coded as an 8 bit unsigned binary number in the range 1 to 85, gives one CIRAF zone.

6.4.3.9 Time and date information data entity - type 8

The current time and date can be specified to allow a receiver to follow frequency schedules, etc. This data entity uses the unique mechanism for the version flag. The data entity is coded as follows:

Modified Julian Date 17 bitsUTC (hours and minutes) 11 bits

The following definitions apply:

Modified Julian Date: this field indicates the date in MJD format.

UTC: this field specifies the current time expressed in hours (5 bits) and minutes (6 bits).

When the time and date are signalled, this data entity shall be sent in the first SDC block after the minute's edge.

6.4.3.10 Audio information data entity - type 9

Each audio service needs a detailed description of the parameters needed for audio decoding. This data entity uses the reconfiguration mechanism for the version flag.

Short Id 2 bits Stream Id 2 bits audio coding 2 bits SBR flag 1 bit audio mode 2 bits audio sampling rate 3 bits text flag 1 bit enhancement flag 1 bit coder field 5 bits rfa 1 bit

The following definitions apply:

short Id: this field indicates the short Id for the service concerned.

Stream Id: this field indicates the stream Id of the stream that carries the service concerned.

audio coding: this field indicated the source coding system as follows:

00: AAC01: CELP10: HVXC

11: reserved

SBR flag: this field indicates whether SBR is used or not as follows:

0: SBR not used

1: SBR used

audio mode: this field depends	s upon the value of the audio coding field as follows:
audio coding field = 00:	
00: mono	
01: lc stereo	
10: stereo	
11: reserved	
audio coding field = 01:	
- rfa	1 bit
- CELP_CRC	1 bit
audio coding field = 10:	
- HVXC_rate	1 bit
- HVXC_CRC	1 bit
CELP_CRC: this field indicat	es whether the CRC is used or not:
0: CRC not used	
1: CRC used	
HVXC_rate: this field indicate	es the rate of the HVXC:
0: 2 kbit	
1: 4 kbit	
HVXC_CRC: this field indica	tes whether the CRC is used or not:
0: CRC not used	
1: CRC used	
audio sampling rate: this field	I indicates the audio sampling frequency as follows:
000: 8 kHz	
001: 12 kHz	
010: 16 kHz	
011: 24 kHz	
100: reserved	
101: reserved	
110: reserved	
111: reserved	
text flag: this field indicates when	hether a text message is present or not as follows:
0: no text message is carried	d
1: text message is carried (s	ee clause 6.5)

enhancement flag: this field indicates whether audio enhancement data is available in another channel as follows:

0: no enhancement available

1: enhancement is available

coder field: this field depends upon the value of the audio coding field as follows:

audio coding field = 00 or 10:

- rfa 5 bits

audio coding field = 01:

- CELP_index 5 bits

CELP_index: this field indicates the CELP bit rate index, as defined in tables 10 and 11 (see clause 5).

rfa: these 1-bit and 5-bit fields shall be reserved for future additions and shall be set to zero until they are defined.

6.4.3.11 FAC channel parameters data entity - type 10

This data entity permits the next configuration FAC channel parameters to be specified in advance for service following across reconfigurations. This data entity uses the reconfiguration mechanism for the version flag. The fields are as follows:

-	Base/Enhancement flag	1 bit
-	Robustness mode	2 bits
-	Spectrum occupancy	4 bits
-	Interleaver depth flag	1 bit
-	MSC mode	2 bits
-	SDC mode	1 bit
-	number of services	4 bits
-	rfa	3 bits
-	rfu	2 bits

The following definitions apply:

Base/Enhancement flag: this 1-bit flag indicates whether the transmission will be the base or enhancement layer as follows:

0: Base layer - decodable by all DRM receivers

1: Enhancement layer - only decodable by receivers with enhancement layer capabilities

Robustness mode: this field indicates the robustness mode of the new configuration as follows:

00: A

01: B

10: C

11: D

Spectrum occupancy: specifies the configuration of the digital signal (see clause 8).

Interleaver depth flag: indicates the depth of the time interleaving as follows:

0: 2 s (long interleaving)

1: 400 ms (short interleaving)

MSC mode: indicates the modulation mode in use for the MSC as follows:

00: 64-QAM, no hierarchical

01: 64-QAM, hierarchical on I

10: 64-QAM, hierarchical on I&Q

11: 16-QAM, no hierarchical

SDC mode: indicates the modulation mode in use for the SDC as follows:

0: 16-OAM

1: 4-QAM

Number of services: indicates the number of audio and data services as follows:

0000: 4 audio services

0001: 1 data service

0010: 2 data services

0011: 3 data services

0100: 1 audio service

0101: 1 audio service and 1 data service

0110: 1 audio service and 2 data services

0111: 1 audio service and 3 data services

1000: 2 audio services

1001: 2 audio services and 1 data service

1010: 2 audio services and 2 data services

1011: reserved

1100: 3 audio services

1101: 3 audio services and 1 data service

1110: reserved

1111: 4 data services

rfa: these 3 bits shall be reserved for future additions and shall be set to zero until they are defined.

rfu: these 2 bits shall be reserved for future use and shall be set to zero until they are defined.

If the DRM transmission is being discontinued at the reconfiguration, then this data entity shall be sent with the length field of the header set to 0, and the first four bits of the body field set to 0.

6.4.3.12 Linkage data entity - type 11

The linkage data entity allows the connections between alternative sources of the same service to be signalled. This data entity uses the list mechanism for the version flag. The information is as follows:

Short Id 2 bits
 number DRM Service Ids, d 3 bits
 number RDS PI codes, p 3 bits
 programme/data flag 1 bit

- number of DAB SIds, s 3 bits

- d Service Ids $d \times 24$ bits - p PI codes $p \times 16$ bits

- s SId codes $s \times 16$ bits or 32 bits

The following definitions apply:

Short Id: this field indicates the short Id for the service concerned.

number of DRM Service Ids: this field indicates the number of Service Ids to follow in the range 0 to 7.

number of RDS PI [5] codes: this field indicates the number of PI codes to follow in the range 0 to 7.

number of DAB SId codes: this field indicates the number of SId codes to follow in the range 0 to 7.

Service Ids: this field indicates the list of Service Ids on which the DRM service indicated by the Short Id field is also carried.

PI code: this field indicates the list of PI codes on which the DRM service indicated by the Short Id field is also carried. Note that FM services without RDS/RBDS shall be given a dummy PI code where the most significant nibble is set to 0.

programme/data flag: this field indicates whether the following DAB SIds are programme or data services as follows:

0: programme service: DAB SIds are 16 bits long

1: data service: DAB SIds are 32 bits long

SId code: this field indicates the list of SId codes on which the DRM service indicated by the Short Id field is also carried.

6.4.3.13 Language and country data entity - type 12

The language and country data entity allows addition language and country information to be signalled. This data entity uses the unique mechanism for the version flag. The information is as follows:

Short Id
rfu
language code
country code
2 bits
24 bits
fo bits

The following definitions apply:

Short Id: this field indicates the short Id for the service concerned.

rfu: these 2 bits shall be reserved for future use and shall be set to zero until they are defined.

Language code: this 24-bit field identifies the language of the target audience of the service according to ISO 639-2 [7] using three characters as specified by ISO 8859-1 [9]. If the language is not specified, the field shall contain three "-" characters.

Country code: this 16-bit field identifies the country of origin of the service (the site of the studio) according to ISO 3166 [8] using two lower case characters as specified by ISO 8859-1 [9]. If the country code is not specified, the field shall contain two "-" characters.

6.4.3.14 Other data entities

Other data entities are reserved for future definition.

6.4.4 Summary of data entity characteristics

Table 62 summarizes the version mechanism, repetition rate and transmission status of each data entity. The standard repetition rate is that all information for that data entity type should be transmitted within one cycle of the entire database. Individual SDC blocks may carry changed information (e.g. time and date) by use of the FAC identity field.

Data entity	Version flag mechanism	Repetition rate	Transmission status
0	reconfiguration	every SDC block	mandatory
1	unique	every SDC block	optional
2	reconfiguration	as required	mandatory for each service for which the FAC CA indication flag = 1
3	list	standard	optional
4	list	standard	optional
5	reconfiguration	as required	mandatory for each data service and data application
6	unique	as required	optional
7	list	standard	optional
8	unique	once per minute	optional
9	reconfiguration	every SDC block	mandatory for each audio service
10	reconfiguration	every SDC block when FAC reconfiguration index is non-zero	mandatory when FAC reconfiguration index is non-zero
11	list	standard	optional
12	unique	standard	optional

Table 62: Summary of data entity characteristics

Table 62 gives the recommended repetition rate for fast access to services. However, when the SDC capacity (see clause 6.4.2) is low, lower repetition rates are permitted for every data entity.

6.4.5 Changing the content of the SDC

The content of the SDC is important for the operation of alternative frequency checking and switching (AFS). For AFS to function, the receiver must know what the content of the SDC is in advance so that a correlation may be performed. For this purpose, the AFS index is provided in the SDC and the FAC validates the index by use of the Identity field.

On transmissions with no alternative frequencies, the content of the SDC can be fully dynamic and changed at will: no AFS function is required. In this case it is recommended that the AFS index should be set to 0, and the Identity field in the FAC should then indicate the sequence 11, 01, 10 etc. to indicate that the AFS function cannot be performed.

On transmissions with alternative frequencies, the assignment of data entities to SDC blocks should be carefully designed in order that the content of the SDC can be as static as possible thereby permitting use of the AFS function. In this case it is recommended that the AFS index is chosen such that all required information can be sent in one cycle of SDC blocks. If the content is completely static then the Identity field in the FAC will indicate the sequence 00, 01, 10, etc. which indicates that the AFS function can be performed at every position, provided the receiver has stored the data for all the SDC blocks in the cycle.

When the time or announcement support and switching is included in the SDC, and alternative frequencies are signalled, then a semi-dynamic use of the SDC is recommended. In this case one or more SDC blocks in the cycle defined by the AFS index are signalled to be invalid by use of the FAC Identity field thereby allowing the content of those blocks to be changed continuously, whilst other SDC blocks are always signalled as valid by use of the FAC Identity field thereby allowing the AFS function to be performed. An example of changing the SDC content and of using the semi-dynamic scheme with the AFS index = 1 is given in annex G.

A change of the AFS index is only allowed at reconfiguration.

6.4.6 Signalling of reconfigurations

Reconfiguration of the DRM multiplex shall be signalled in advance in order to permit receivers to make the best decisions about how to handle the changes. There two types of reconfiguration: a service reconfiguration, which concerns the reallocation of the data capacity between the services of the MSC; and a channel reconfiguration, which concerns changes to the overall capacity of the MSC.

Both types of reconfiguration are signalled by setting the FAC reconfiguration index to a non-zero value. The index then counts down on each subsequent transmission super frame. The reconfiguration index shall be identical for all three transmission frames of a transmission super frame. The final transmission super frame corresponding to the current configuration shall be that in which the reconfiguration index = 1. The new configuration takes effect for the next transmission super frame and in which the reconfiguration index = 0. Ideally the reconfiguration should be signalled as far in advance as possible (i.e. the reconfiguration index should first take the value 7) in order to provide the greatest chance that the receiver will receive all the information necessary for the next configuration.

All data entity types that use the reconfiguration mechanism for the version flag that are present in the current configuration, and all data entity types that use the reconfiguration mechanism for the version flag that are required in the new configuration, shall be sent during the period when the reconfiguration index is non-zero with the version flag indicating the next configuration. This shall include data entity type 10 that signals the FAC channel parameters for the new configuration.

6.4.6.1 Service reconfigurations

A service reconfiguration is one in which the data capacity of the MSC is reallocated between services. This happens when the number of services in the multiplex is changed or the size of data streams is changed. A service reconfiguration shall also be signalled if any of the content of the data entity types using the reconfiguration mechanism of the version flag changes.

When a new service is introduced, and the overall capacity of the MSC is not changed, then the receiver shall follow the currently selected service through the reconfiguration. To facilitate this, the Service Identity and Short Id of all continuing services shall remain the same. The new service shall use a Short Id that is not used in the current configuration. The one exception to this rule is if there are four services in the current configuration and four services in the new configuration. In this case, if the currently selected service is discontinued, then the receiver will follow to the new service with the same Short Id if it is of the same type (i.e. both are audio services).

If the currently selected service is discontinued at the reconfiguration, then the receiver may try to find another source of that service on another frequency and/or system by using the information from data entity types 3 and 11.

6.4.6.2 Channel reconfigurations

A channel reconfiguration is one in which the following FAC channel parameters are altered: spectrum occupancy, interleaver depth and MSC mode; and when the robustness mode is changed. In this case the receiver will be unable to follow the currently selected service without disruption to the audio output.

If the transmission is discontinued on the tuned frequency, then a reconfiguration shall be signalled with data entity type 10 taking a special value (see clause 6.4.3.11). In this specific case, the other data entity types that use the reconfiguration mechanism for the version flag shall not be signalled.

6.5 Text message application

Text messages can provide a highly valuable additional element to an audio service without consuming much data capacity. The text message is a basic part of DRM and consumes only 80 bits/s. This capacity can be saved if the service provider does not use text messaging.

6.5.1 Structure

The text message (when present) shall occupy the last four bytes of the lower protected part of each logical frame carrying an audio stream. The message is divided into a number of segments and UTF-8 character coding is used. The beginning of each segment of the message is indicated by setting all four bytes to the value 0xFF.

When no text message is available for insertion all four bytes shall be set to 0x00.

The text message may comprise up to 8 segments. Each segment consists of a header, a body and a CRC. The body shall contain 16 bytes of character data unless it is the last segment in which case it may contain less than 16 bytes.

Each segment is further divided into four-byte pieces which are placed into each successive frame. If the length of the last segment is not a multiple of four then the incomplete frame shall be padded with 0x00 bytes.

The structure of the segment is as follows:

Header	16 bits
Body	$n \times 8$ bits
CRC	16 bits

The Header is made up as follows:

-	toggle bit	1 bit
-	first flag	1 bit
-	last flag	1 bit
-	command flag	1 bit
-	field 1	4 bits
-	field 2	4 bits
-	rfa	4 bits

The following definitions apply:

Toggle bit: this bit shall be maintained in the same state as long as segments from the same message are being transmitted. When a segment from a different text message is sent for the first time, this bit shall be inverted with respect to its previous state. If a text message, which may consist of several segments, is repeated, then this bit shall remain unchanged.

First flag, Last flag: these flags shall be used to identify particular segments which form a succession of segments in a text message. The flags shall be assigned as follows:

First Last flag flag		The segment is:
0	0	: an intermediate segment;
0	1	: the last segment;
1	0	: the first segment;
1	1	: the one and only segment.

Command flag: this 1-bit flag shall signal whether Field 1 contains the length of the body of the segment or a special command, as follows:

- 0: Field 1 signals the **length** of the body of the segment
- 1: Field 1 contains a special command

Field 1:

- **Length:** this 4-bit field, expressed as an unsigned binary number, shall specify the number of bytes in the body minus 1. It shall normally take the value 15 except in the last segment.
- **Command:** this 4-bit field shall contain a special command, as follows (all other codes are reserved for future use):

0 0 0 1: the message shall be removed from the display.

Field 2:

- if **First flag** = "1":

this field shall contain the value "1111";

- if First flag = "0":

Rfa: this 1-bit field is reserved for future additions. The bit shall be set to zero until it is defined.

SegNum (Segment number): this 3-bit field, expressed as an unsigned binary number, shall specify the sequence number of the current segment minus 1. (The second segment of a label corresponds to SegNum = 1, the third segment to SegNum = 2, etc.) The value 0 is reserved for future use.

Rfa: this 4-bit field shall be reserved for future additions. These bits shall be set to zero until they are defined.

Body: this field shall be coded as a string of characters (maximum 16). If the last character of a message segment is a multibyte character and not all bytes fit into the body then the character shall continue in the next message segment. This field shall be omitted when the C flag = "1" (special command).

The following additional codes may be used:

- Code 0x0A may be inserted to indicate a preferred line break.
- Code 0x0B may be inserted to indicate the end of a headline. Headlines shall be restricted to a maximum length of 2×16 displayable characters (including hyphens introduced as a result of a control code 0x1F) and may contain 0 or 1 preferred line breaks codes (Code 0x0A). There may not be more than sixteen characters before any line-break and there may not be more than sixteen characters after any line-break.
- Code 0x1F (hex) may be inserted to indicate a preferred word break. This code may be used to display long words comprehensibly.

CRC (Cyclic Redundancy Check): this 16-bit CRC shall be calculated on the header and the body. It shall use the generator polynomial $G_{16}(x) = x^{16} + x^{12} + x^5 + 1$.

6.6 Packet mode

Data services generally consist of either streams of information, in either synchronous or asynchronous form, or files of information. A generalized packet delivery system allows the delivery of asynchronous streams and files for various services in the same data stream and allows the bit rate of the (synchronous) data stream to be shared on a frame-by-frame basis between the various services. Services can be carried by a series of single packets or as a series of data units. A data unit is a series of packets that are considered as one entity with regard to error handling - one received errored packet within a data unit causes the whole data unit to be rejected. This mechanism can be used to transfer files and also to allow simpler synchronization of asynchronous streams.

The size of a packet mode data logical frame shall be a multiple of the total packet size. The maximum length of a data unit is 8 215 bytes.

6.6.1 Packet structure

The packet is made up as follows:

header 8 bits
data field *n* bytes
CRC 16 bits

The **header** contains information to describe the packet.

The **data field** contains the data intended for a particular service. The length of the data field is indicated by use of data entity 5, see clause 6.4.3.6.

The **CRC** (Cyclic Redundancy Check): this 16-bit CRC shall be calculated on the header and the data field. It shall use the generator polynomial $G_{16}(x) = x^{16} + x^{12} + x^5 + 1$ (see annex D).

6.6.1.1 Header

The header consists of the following fields:

first flag	1 bit
last flag	1 bit
packet Id	2 bits
padded packet indicator (PPI)	1 bit
continuity index (CI)	3 bits

The following definitions apply:

First flag, Last flag: these flags shall be used to identify particular packets which form a succession of packets. The flags shall be assigned as follows:

First	Last	
flag	flag	The packet is:
0	0	: an intermediate packet;
0	1	: the last packet of a data unit;
1	0	: the first packet of a data unit;
1	1	the one and only packet of a data unit.

Packet Id: this 2-bit field shall indicate the Packet Id of this packet.

Padded Packet Indicator: this 1-bit flag shall indicate whether the data field carries padding or not, as follows:

- 0: no padding is present: all data bytes in the data field are useful;
- 1: padding is present: the first byte gives the number of useful data bytes in the data field.

Continuity index: this 3-bit field shall increment by one modulo-8 for each packet with this packet Id.

6.6.1.2 Data field

The data field contains the useful data intended for a particular service.

If the padded packet indicator (PPI) field of the header is 0, then all bytes of the data field are useful bytes.

If the PPI is 1 then the first byte shall indicate the number of useful bytes that follow, and the data field is completed with padding bytes of value 0x00.

Packets with no useful data are permitted if no packet data is available to fill the logical frame. The PPI shall be set to 1 and the first byte of the data field shall be set to 0 to indicate no useful data. The first and last flags shall be set to 1. The continuity index shall be incremented for these empty packets. If less than 4 sub-streams are used within the data stream then an unused packet id shall be used. Empty packets using a packet id of shall not be inserted during the transmission of a DRM data unit using the same packet id .

6.6.2 Asynchronous streams

Asynchronous streams can be used to transport byte-oriented information. Both single packets and data units can be used to transport asynchronous streams.

Applications that use the single packet transport mechanism shall be able to deal with missing data packets. The first and last flags shall indicate intermediate packets.

Applications that use the data unit transport mechanism can carry a collection of bytes that are related in a data unit and then make use of the error handling of data units for synchronization purposes.

6.6.3 Files

The file may be carried in a data unit.

Applications that use this transport mechanism shall provide a mechanism to identify each object.

The first and last flags shall be used to indicate the series of packets that make up the data unit. The continuity index is used to determine whether any intermediate packets have been lost.

6.6.4 Choosing the packet length

A data stream for packet mode may contain one or more packets per logical frame, and the packets may belong to one or more services. However, all packets contained in the stream shall have the same length to minimize the propagation of errors. The choice of the packet length depends on various factors, but the following should be taken into account:

- The overhead of signalling the header and CRC is fixed per packet. Therefore the larger the packet, the lower the ratio of overhead to useful data.
- The amount of padding carried in packets is related to the size of the files compared to the packet size or the transit delay requirements for asynchronous streams. Large packets are less efficient at transporting many small objects.

7 Channel coding and modulation

7.1 Introduction

The DRM system consists of three different channels, the MSC, SDC and FAC. Because of the different needs of these channels different coding and mapping schemes shall be applied. An overview of the encoding process is shown in figure 16.

The coding is based on a multilevel coding scheme for which the principle is explained in clause 7.3. Due to different error protection needs within one service or for different services within one multiplex different mapping schemes and combinations of code rates shall be applicable: unequal error protection (UEP) and equal error protection (EEP) are available and can be combined with hierarchical modulation. Equal error protection uses a single code rate to protect all the data in a channel. EEP is mandatory for the FAC and SDC. Instead of EEP, unequal error protection can be used with two code rates to allow the data in the Main Service Channel to be assigned to the higher protected part and the lower protected part. When using hierarchical modulation three mapping strategies shall be applicable to the MSC: the standard mapping (SM), the symmetrical hierarchical mapping (HMsym) and a mixture of the previous two mappings (HMmix) that results in the real component of the constellation following a hierarchical mapping and the imaginary part following a standard one. The hierarchical mappings split the decodable data stream into two parts: a very strongly protected part (VSPP) and a standard protected part (SPP). The SM method only consists of a SPP. In any case, up to two different overall code rates shall be applied to the SPP of the MSC. For the FAC and SDC only SM is allowed. The application of the coding to the different channels is described in clause 7.5.

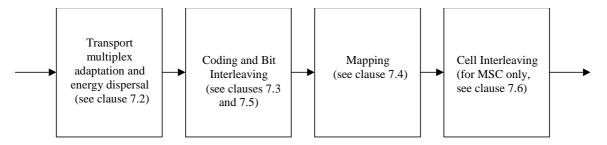


Figure 16: Functional block diagram of the coding and interleaving

7.2 Transport multiplex adaptation and Energy dispersal

7.2.1 Transport multiplex adaptation

The different channels (MSC, SDC, FAC) are processed in the channel coding independently. The vector length *L* for processing equals one FAC block for the FAC, one SDC block for the SDC or one multiplex frame for the MSC.

7.2.1.1 MSC

The number of bits *LMUX* per multiplex frame is dependent on the robustness mode, spectrum occupancy and constellation:

- when using one protection level (EEP) it is given by:

$$L_{MUX} = L_2$$

- when using two protection levels (UEP) it is given by:

$$L_{MUX} = L_1 + L_2$$

where the number of bits of the higher protected part is L_1 and the number of bits of the lower protected part is L_2 .

- when using HMsym or HMmix the number of very strongly protected bits is given by L_{VSPP} .

84

 L_1, L_2 and L_{VSPP} shall be calculated as follows:

SM:

$$L_1 = \sum_{p=0}^{P_{\text{max}} - 1} 2N_1 R_p$$

$$L_2 = \sum_{p=0}^{P_{\text{max}} - 1} RX_p \left[\frac{2N_2 - 12}{RY_p} \right]$$

$$L_{VSPP} = 0$$

 P_{max} is the number of levels (4-QAM: P_{max} = 1; 16-QAM: P_{max} = 2; 64-QAM: P_{max} = 3).

 RX_p is the numerator of the code rate of each individual level, see table 65.

 RY_p is the denominator of the code rate of each individual level, see table 65.

 $R_{\rm p}$ is the code rate of each individual level, see table 65.

HMsym:

$$L_1 = \sum_{p=1}^{2} 2N_1 R_p$$

$$L_2 = \sum_{p=1}^{2} RX_p \left[\frac{2N_2 - 12}{RY_p} \right],$$

$$L_{VSPP} = RX_0 \left| \frac{2(N_1 + N_2) - 12}{RY_0} \right|$$

 P_{max} =3 is the number of levels for 64-QAM using HMsym.

NOTE: A hierarchical mapping scheme can only be used in a 64-QAM signal constellation.

 RX_p is the numerator of the code rate of each individual level, see table 65.

RY_p is the denominator of the code rate of each individual level, see table 65.

 $\boldsymbol{R}_{\mathrm{D}}$ is the code rate of each individual level, see table 65.

HMmix:

$$L_{1} = N_{1}R_{0}^{\text{Im}} + \sum_{p=1}^{2} N_{1}(R_{p}^{\text{Re}} + R_{p}^{\text{Im}})$$

$$L_{2} = RX_{0}^{\text{Im}} \left\lfloor \frac{N_{2} - 12}{RY_{0}} \right\rfloor + \sum_{p=1}^{2} RX_{p}^{\text{Re}} \left\lfloor \frac{N_{2} - 12}{RY_{p}} \right\rfloor + RX_{p}^{\text{Im}} \left\lfloor \frac{N_{2} - 12}{RY_{p}} \right\rfloor$$

$$L_{VSPP} = RX_{o}^{\text{Re}} \left\lfloor \frac{N_{1} + N_{2} - 12}{RY_{0}^{\text{Re}}} \right\rfloor$$

 $P_{max} = 3$ is the number of levels for 64-QAM using HMmix

 RX_p^{Re} , RX_p^{Im} are the numerators of the code rates of each individual level (see table 65) for the real and imaginary component respectively.

 RY_p^{Re} , RY_p^{Im} are the denominators of the code rate of each individual level (see table 65) for the real and imaginary component respectively.

 R_p^{Re} , R_p^{Im} are the code rates of each individual level (see table 65) for the real and imaginary component respectively and | | means round towards minus infinity.

The total number N_{MIJX} of MSC OFDM cells per multiplex frame is given in clause 7.7.

The total number N_{MUX} of MSC OFDM cells per multiplex frame when using one protection level (EEP) equals N_2 .

The total number N_{MUX} of MSC OFDM cells per multiplex frame when using two protection levels (UEP) equals the addition of the cells of the higher protected part and the lower protected part:

$$N_{MUX} = N_1 + N_2.$$

 N_1 is the number of OFDM cells used for the higher protected part.

 N_2 is the number of OFDM cells used for the lower protected part including the tailbits.

To calculate the number N_1 of OFDM cells in the higher protected part (part A) the following formulae shall apply:

SM:

$$N_{1} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{8X}{2RY_{lcm}} \sum_{p=0}^{P_{max}-1} R_{p} \end{bmatrix} RY_{lcm}$$

HMsym:

$$N_1 = \left[\frac{8X}{2RY_{lcm} \sum_{p=1}^{2} R_p} \right] RY_{lcm}$$

HMmix:

$$N_{1} = \left[\frac{8X}{RY_{lcm}\left(R_{0}^{\text{Im}} + \sum_{p=1}^{2} \left(R_{p}^{\text{Re}} + R_{p}^{\text{Im}}\right)\right)}\right]RY_{lcm}$$

where:

X shall be the number of bytes in part A (as signalled in the SDC);

 RY_{lcm} shall be taken from tables 67 and 68 for SM; from tables 69 and 70 for HMsym; and from tables 68, 70 and 71 for HMmix.

means round towards plus infinity.

To calculate the number N_2 of OFDM cells in the lower protected part (part B) the following formula shall apply:

$$N_2 = N_{MUX} - N_1$$

The following restrictions shall be taken into account:

$$N_1 \in \{0, \dots N_{MUX} - 20\}$$

$$N_2 \in \{20, \dots N_{MUX}\}$$

7.2.1.2 FAC

The number of bits L_{FAC} per FAC block equals 72 bits in every mode.

The total number N_{FAC} of FAC OFDM cells per FAC block equals 65 in every mode.

The formulas given in clause 7.2.1.1 for the MSC are valid also for the FAC under the constraint of EEP and SM (only 4-QAM: $P_{\text{max}} = 1$), i.e. $L_{\text{FAC}} = L_2$ and $N_{\text{FAC}} = N_2$.

7.2.1.3 SDC

The number of bits L_{SDC} per SDC block is dependent on the robustness mode, spectrum occupancy and constellation.

The total number N_{SDC} of SDC OFDM cells per SDC block are given in table 63.

The formulas given in clause 7.2.1.1 for the MSC are valid also for the SDC under the constraint of EEP and SM (only 4-QAM: $P_{max} = 1$, 16-QAM: $P_{max} = 2$), i.e. $L_{SDC} + L_2$ and $N_{SDC} = N_2$.

Table 63: Number of QAM cells N_{SDC} for SDC

Robustness	Spectrum Occupancy									
mode	0	0 1 2 3 4 5								
Α	167	190	359	405	754	846				
В	130	150	282	322	588	662				
С	-	-	-	288	-	607				
D	-	-	-	152	-	332				

7.2.2 Energy dispersal

The purpose of the energy dispersal is to avoid the transmission of signal patterns which might result in an unwanted regularity in the transmitted signal. The output of the dispersal shall be denoted as u_i .

Energy dispersal shall be applied on the different channels (MSC, SDC, FAC) in order to reduce the possibility that systematic patterns result in unwanted regularity in either the transmitted signal or in any digital processing, this by providing a deterministic selective complementing of bits.

The individual inputs of the energy dispersal scramblers shown in figure 17 shall be scrambled by a modulo-2 addition with a pseudo-random binary sequence (PRBS), prior to channel encoding.

The PRBS shall be defined as the output of the feedback shift register of figure 17. It shall use a polynomial of degree 9, defined by:

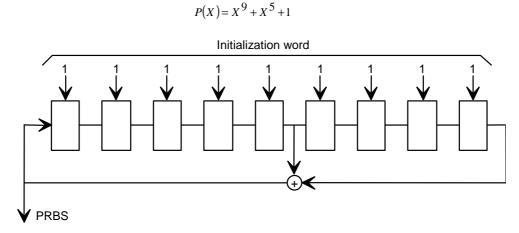


Figure 17: PRBS generator

The initialization word shall be applied in such a way that the first bit of the PRBS is obtained when the outputs of all shift register stages are set to value "1"; the first 16 bits of the PRBS are given in table 64.

Table 64: First 16 bits of the PRBS

bit index	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
bit value	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	0

The FAC, SDC and MSC shall be processed by the energy dispersal scramblers as follows:

- The vector length for processing equals one FAC block for the FAC, one SDC block for the SDC and one multiplex frame and one hierarchical frame for the MSC.
- Each FAC block consists of 72 bits, the block lengths for the SDC and MSC are dependent on the robustness mode, spectrum occupancy and constellation, see clause 7.2.1.
- The four blocks shall be processed independently. The input vector shall be scrambled with the PRBS, the first bit of the vector being added modulo 2 to the PRBS bit of index 0.

The scramblers of the different channels are reset as follows:

- FAC: every FAC block;
- SDC: every SDC block;
- MSC: every multiplex frame for the standard protected part, every hierarchical frame for the very strongly protected part.

7.3 Coding

Clause 7.3.1 explains the structure of multilevel coding for the different mappings, clause 7.3.2 defines the component code of the multilevel coding scheme and clause 7.3.3 the corresponding bit-wise interleaving.

7.3.1 Multilevel coding

The channel encoding process is based on a multilevel coding scheme. The principle of multilevel coding is the joint optimization of coding and modulation to reach the best transmission performance. This denotes that more error prone bit positions in the QAM mapping get a higher protection. The different levels of protection are reached with different component codes which are realized with punctured convolutional codes, derived from the same mother code.

The decoding in the receiver can be done either straightforwardly or through an iterative process. Consequently the performance of the decoder with errored data can be increased with the number of iterations and hence is dependent on the decoder implementation.

Depending on the signal constellation and mapping used, five different schemes shall be applied. The 1-level scheme shall be considered as a special case of the multilevel coding scheme. Different mapping schemes shall only be applicable to the 64-QAM constellation as depicted in figures 23, 24 and 25. For the standard and symmetrical hierarchical modulation (SM and HMsym), identical mappings shall be used for the real and imaginary components of the signal constellation. For the mixed mapping hierarchical modulation (HMmix) separate mappings shall be used for the real and imaginary components of the signal constellation.

3-level coding for SM & HMsym

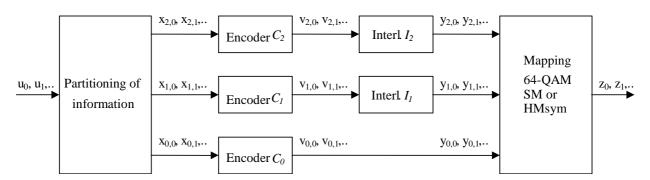


Figure 18: Multilevel coding with 3 levels for SM and HMsym

3- level coding 64-QAM HMmix

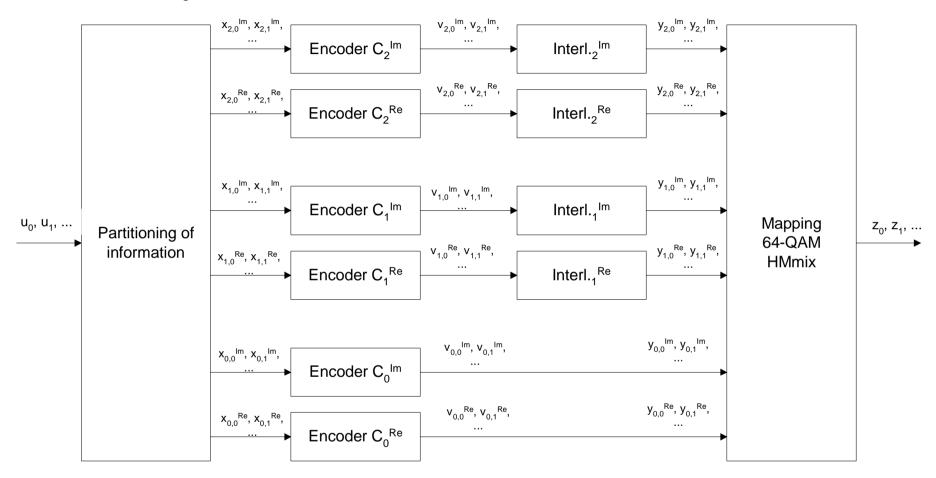


Figure 19: Multilevel coding with 3 levels for HMmix

2-level coding

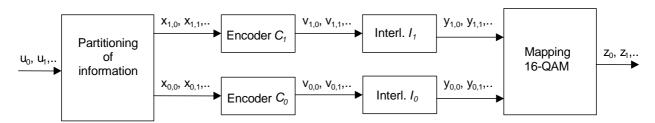


Figure 20: Multilevel coding with 2 levels (SM)

1-level coding

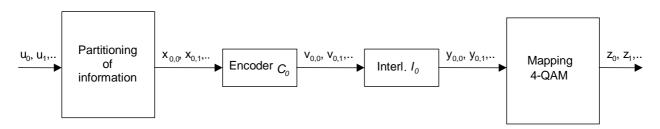


Figure 21: Multilevel coding with 1 level (SM)

7.3.1.1 Partitioning of bitstream in SM and HMsym

The bitstream (u_i) shall be partitioned into several streams $(x_{p,i})$ according the number of levels. The bits of the higher protected part shall be fed to the encoders on $p = 0,...P_{max}$ -1, then the bits of the lower protected part shall be fed to the encoders on $p = 0,...P_{max}$ -1. This results in:

$$(x_{0,0},x_{0,1},\ldots x_{0,M_{0,1}-1},x_{1,0},x_{1,1},\ldots x_{1,M_{1,1}-1},x_{2,0},x_{2,1},\ldots x_{2,M_{2,1}-1},x_{0,M_{0,1}}x_{0,M_{0,1}+1},\ldots x_{0,M_{0,1}+M_{0,2}-1},x_{1,M_{1,1}}x_{1,M_{1,1}+1},\ldots x_{1,M_{1,1}+M_{1,2}-1},x_{2,M_{2,1}}x_{2,M_{2,1}+1},\ldots x_{2,M_{2,1}+M_{2,2}-1}) = \begin{pmatrix} u_0,u_1,\ldots u_{L_{VSPP}+L_1+L_2-1} \end{pmatrix}$$

for the 3-level coding,

$$(x_{0,0}, x_{0,1}, \dots x_{0,M_{0,1}-1}, x_{1,0}, x_{1,1}, \dots x_{1,M_{1,1}-1}, x_{1,0}, x_{0,M_{0,1}}, \dots x_{0,M_{0,1}+1}, \dots x_{0$$

for the 2-level coding,

$$(x_{0,0},x_{0,1},\dots x_{0,M_{0,1}-1},x_{0,M_{0,1}}x_{0,M_{0,1}+1},\dots x_{0,M_{0,1}+M_{0,2}-1}) = \left(u_0,u_1,\dots u_{L_1+L_2-1}\right)$$

for the 1-level coding.

When using only one protection level (EEP) the elements with negative indexes shall not be taken into account.

The number of bits on each level *p* shall be calculated for the higher protected part and lower protected part by:

$$M_{p,1} = 2N_1R_p$$

$$M_{p,2} = RX_p \left| \frac{2N_2 - 12}{RY_p} \right| \text{ where } p \in \begin{cases} \{0,1,2\} \text{ for SM} \\ \{1,2\} \text{ for HMsym} \end{cases}$$

91

For the case of HMsym, $M_{0,2}$ calculates as follows:

$$M_{0,2} = RX_0 \left| \frac{2(N_1 + N_2) - 12}{RY_0} \right| = L_{VSPP}$$

The total number of bits on each level p results in:

$$M_p = M_{p,1} + M_{p,2}$$

NOTE: For HMsym $M_{0,1} = 0$.

From these formulas it can be derived that the input bitstreams $(x_{p,i})$ to the encoders C_p have different lengths according to their code rate so that all the encoder output bitstreams $(v_{p,i})$ have the same length.

The overall code rate for each protection part for the SM and HMsym is approximately:

SM:

$$R_{all} = \frac{\sum_{p=0}^{P_{\text{max}}-1} R_p}{P_{\text{max}}} ,$$

when using P_{max} levels.

HMsvm:

$$R_{VSPP} = R_0$$

$$R_{SPP.all} = (R_1 + R_2)/2$$

when using $P_{max} = 3$ levels.

7.3.1.2 Partitioning of bitstream in HMmix

The bitstream (u_i) shall be partitioned into several streams ($x_{p,i}^{\text{Re}}, x_{p,i}^{\text{Im}}$) according the number of levels. The bits of the higher protected part shall be fed to the encoders on $p = 0,...P_{\text{max}}$ -1, than the bits of the lower protected part shall be fed to the encoders on $p = 0,...P_{\text{max}}$ -1. This results in:

$$(x_{0,0}^{\mathrm{Im}}, x_{0,1}^{\mathrm{Im}}, \dots, x_{0,M_{0,1}^{\mathrm{Im}-1}}^{\mathrm{Im}}, x_{1,0}^{\mathrm{Re}}, x_{1,1}^{\mathrm{Re}}, \dots, x_{1,M_{1,1}^{\mathrm{Re}-1}}^{\mathrm{Re}}, x_{1,0}^{\mathrm{Im}}, x_{1,1}^{\mathrm{Im}}, \dots, x_{1,M_{1,1}^{\mathrm{Im}-1}}^{\mathrm{Im}}, x_{2,0}^{\mathrm{Re}}, x_{2,1}^{\mathrm{Re}}, \dots, x_{2,M_{2,1}^{\mathrm{Re}-1}}^{\mathrm{Re}}, x_{2,0}^{\mathrm{Im}}, x_{2,1}^{\mathrm{Im}}, \dots, x_{2,M_{2,1}^{\mathrm{Im}-1}}^{\mathrm{Im}}, x_{2,M_{2,1}^{\mathrm{Im}-1}}^{\mathrm{Im}-1}, x_{2,M_{$$

for the 3-level coding with HMmix.

When using only one protection level (EEP) the elements with negative indexes shall not taken into account.

The number of bits on each level p shall be calculated for the higher protected and lower protected parts for the real and imaginary component by:

$$M_{0,1}^{\text{Re}} = 0 , M_{0,1}^{\text{Im}} = N_1 R_0^{\text{Im}}$$

$$M_{0,2}^{\text{Re}} = RX_0^{\text{Re}} \left[\frac{N_1 + N_2 - 12}{RY_0^{\text{Re}}} \right] = L_{VSSP}, M_{0,2}^{\text{Im}} = RX_0^{\text{Im}} \left[\frac{N_2 - 12}{RY_0^{\text{Im}}} \right]$$

$$M_{p,1}^{\text{Re}} = N_1 R_p^{\text{Re}} \text{ and } M_{p,1}^{\text{Im}} = N_1 R_p^{\text{Im}} \text{ for } p \in \{1,2\}$$

$$M_{p,2}^{\text{Re}} = RX_p^{\text{Re}} \left[\frac{N_2 - 12}{RY_p^{\text{Re}}} \right] \text{ and } M_{p,2}^{\text{Im}} = RX_p^{\text{Im}} \left[\frac{N_2 - 12}{RY_p^{\text{Im}}} \right] \text{ for } p \in \{1,2\}$$

The total number of bits on each level p in the real and imaginary component results in:

$$M_p^{\text{Re}} = M_{p,1}^{\text{Re}} + M_{p,2}^{\text{Re}}$$
 and $M_p^{\text{Im}} = M_{p,1}^{\text{Im}} + M_{p,2}^{\text{Im}}$ for $p \in \{0,1,2\}$

From these formulas it can be derived that the input bitstreams $(x_{p,i}^{\text{Re}})$ and $(x_{p,i}^{\text{Im}})$ to the encoders C_p^{Re} and C_p^{Im} respectively have different lengths according to their code rate so that all the encoder output bitstreams $p \in \{0,1,2\}$ have the same length.

The overall code rate for the HMmix schemes of each protection part is approximately:

$$R_{VSPP}=R_0^{\rm Re}$$

$$R_{SPP,all}=(R_0^{\rm Im}+R_1^{\rm Re}+R_1^{\rm Im}+R_2^{\rm Re}+R_2^{\rm Im})/5$$

when using $P_{max} = 3$ levels.

7.3.2 Component Code

The component code C_p is based on punctured convolutional coding with a mother code of rate 1/4 and constraint length 7. The mother convolutional encoder generates from the vector $(x_{p,i})_{i=0}^{M_p-1} = (a_i)_{i=0}^{I-1}$ a codeword $\{(b_{0,i},b_{1,i},b_{2,i},b_{3,i})\}_{i=0}^{I+5}$. This codeword shall be defined by:

$$\begin{split} b_{0,i} &= a_i \oplus a_{i-2} \oplus a_{i-3} \oplus a_{i-5} \oplus a_{i-6}; \\ b_{1,i} &= a_i \oplus a_{i-1} \oplus a_{i-2} \oplus a_{i-3} \oplus a_{i-6}; \\ b_{2,i} &= a_i \oplus a_{i-1} \oplus a_{i-4} \oplus a_{i-6}; \\ b_{3,i} &= a_i \oplus a_{i-2} \oplus a_{i-3} \oplus a_{i-5} \oplus a_{i-6}; \end{split}$$

for i = 0, 1, 2, ..., I + 5.

When i does not belong to the set $\{0, 1, 2, ..., I-1\}$, a_i shall be equal to zero by definition.

The encoding can be achieved using the convolutional encoder presented in figure 22.

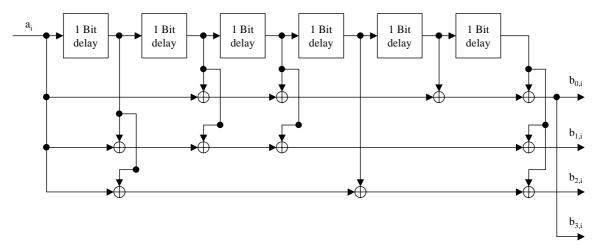


Figure 22: Convolutional encoder

The octal forms of the generator polynomials are 133, 171, 145 and 133, respectively.

The vector $(a_{-6}, a_{-5}, a_{-4}, a_{-3}, a_{-2}, a_{-1})$ corresponds to the all-zero initial state of the shift register and the vector $(a_{I}, a_{I+1}, a_{I+2}, a_{I+3}, a_{I+4}, a_{I+5})$ corresponds to the all-zero final state of the shift register.

In addition to the mother code the system shall allow punctured rates. Table 65 shows the puncturing patterns.

Table 65: Puncturing patterns

Code rates R _p Numerator		Denominator RY _p	Puncturing pattern	Transmitted sequence
1/4	1	4	B ₀ : 1	b _{0,0} b _{1,0} b _{2,0} b _{3,0}
			B ₁ : 1	
			B ₂ : 1	
			B ₃ : 1	
3/10	3	10	B ₀ : 1 1 1	$b_{0,0} b_{1,0} b_{2,0} b_{3,0} b_{0,1} b_{1,1} b_{2,1}$
			B ₁ : 1 1 1	b _{0,2} b _{1,2} b _{2,2}
			B ₂ : 1 1 1	
			B ₃ : 1 0 0	
1/3	1	3	B ₀ : 1	b _{0,0} b _{1,0} b _{2,0}
			B ₁ : 1	
			B ₂ : 1	
			B ₃ : 0	
4/11	4	11	B ₀ : 1 1 1 1	$b_{0,0} b_{1,0} b_{2,0} b_{0,1} b_{1,1} b_{2,1} b_{0,2}$
			B ₁ : 1 1 1 1	b _{1,2} b _{2,2} b _{0,3} b _{1,3}
			B ₂ : 1 1 1 0	
			B ₃ : 0 0 0 0	
1/2	1	2	B ₀ : 1	b _{0,0} b _{1,0}
			B ₁ : 1	
			B ₂ : 0	
			B ₃ : 0	
4/7	4	7	B ₀ : 1 1 1 1	b _{0,0} b _{1,0} b _{0,1} b _{2,1} b _{0,2} b _{1,2} b _{0,3}
			B ₁ : 1 0 1 0	
			B ₂ : 0 1 0 0	
			B ₃ : 0 0 0 0	
3/5	3	5	B ₀ : 1 1 1	b _{0,0} b _{1,0} b _{0,1} b _{0,2} b _{1,2}
			B ₁ : 1 0 1	
			B ₂ : 0 0 0	
			B ₃ : 0 0 0	
2/3	2	3	B ₀ : 1 1	b _{0,0} b _{1,0} b _{0,1}
			B ₁ : 1 0	
			B ₂ : 0 0	
			B ₃ : 0 0	
8/11	8	11	B ₀ : 11111111	$b_{0,0} b_{1,0} b_{0,1} b_{0,2} b_{0,3} b_{1,3} b_{0,4}$
			B ₁ : 1 0 0 1 0 0 1 0	b _{0,5} b _{0,6} b _{1,6} b _{0,7}
			B ₂ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	
			B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	
3/4	3	4	B ₀ : 1 1 1	b _{0,0} b _{1,0} b _{0,1} b _{0,2}
			B ₁ : 1 0 0	
			B ₂ : 0 0 0	
			B ₃ : 0 0 0	
4/5	4	5	B ₀ : 1 1 1 1	b _{0,0} b _{1,0} b _{0,1} b _{0,2} b _{0,3} b _{0,4}
			B ₁ : 1 0 0 0	
			B ₂ : 0 0 0 0	
			B ₃ : 0 0 0 0	

Code rates R _p	Numerator RX _p	Denominator RY _p	Puncturing pattern	Transmitted sequence
7/8	7			b _{0,0} b _{1,0} b _{0,1} b _{0,2} b _{0,3} b _{0,4} b _{0,5} b _{0,6}
			B ₂ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	0,0
8/9	8		B ₀ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 B ₂ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	b _{0,0} b _{1,0} b _{0,1} b _{0,2} b _{0,3} b _{0,4} b _{0,5} b _{0,6} b _{0,7}

The last 24 bits of the serial mother codeword shall be punctured differently for the SDC and MSC coding. The index r_p shall be used with table 66 to find the puncturing vector for the tailbits for each level. This index shall be calculated with the following formula:

SM and HMsym:

$$r_p = (2N_2 - 12) - RY_p \left[\frac{2N_2 - 12}{RY_p} \right] \text{ for } p \in \{0,1,2\}$$

HMmix:

$$r_0^{\text{Re}} = (N_1 + N_2 - 12) - RY_0^{\text{Re}} \left[\frac{N_1 + N_2 - 12}{RY_0^{\text{Re}}} \right],$$

$$r_p^{\text{Re}} = (N_2 - 12) - RY_p^{\text{Re}} \left| \frac{N_2 - 12}{RY_p^{\text{Re}}} \right| \text{ for } p \in \{1, 2\}$$

$$r_p^{\text{Im}} = (N_2 - 12) - RY_p^{\text{Im}} \left| \frac{N_2 - 12}{RY_p^{\text{Im}}} \right| \text{ for } p \in \{0,1,2\}$$

Table 66: Puncturing patterns of the tailbits

Transmitted sequence Description	₄ b _{0,5} b _{1,5}
B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₂ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	. ,
B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	
1	
B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₂ : 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	
B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₂ : 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	4 b _{1.4} b _{0.5} b _{1.5}
B ₂ : 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 B ₆ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₂ : 1 0 0 1 0 0 B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 B ₆ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₂ : 1 1 0 1 0 0 B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 B ₆ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₂ : 1 1 0 1 1 0 B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 B ₆ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₂ : 1 1 0 1 1 0 B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 B ₆ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	,,.
B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	
B ₀ : 1 1 1 1 1 1	
B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1	3 b _{0.4} b _{1.4} b _{0.5} b _{1.5}
B ₂ : 1 0 0 1 0 0 B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 3 B ₀ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₂ : 1 1 0 1 0 0 B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 4 B ₀ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₂ : 1 1 0 1 1 0 B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 5 B ₀ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₂ : 1 1 0 1 1 0 B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0	7 0,4 1,4 0,5 1,5
B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	
3	
B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1	2 b2 2 b0 4 b4 4 b0 5
B ₂ : 1 1 0 1 0 0 B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 4 B ₀ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₂ : 1 1 0 1 1 0 B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 5 B ₀ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 B ₂ : 1 1 0 1 1 0 B ₃ : 0 1 0 0 0 0 0	5 - 2,5 - 0,4 - 1,4 - 0,5
B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	
4 B ₀ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 b _{0,0} b _{1,0} b _{2,0} b _{0,1} b _{1,1} b _{2,1} b _{0,2} b _{1,2} b _{0,3} b _{1,3} b _{1,5} b _{0,5} b _{1,5} b _{0,5} b _{1,5} b _{0,0} b _{1,0} b _{2,0} b _{0,1} b _{1,1} b _{2,1} b _{0,2} b _{1,2} b _{0,3} b _{1,5} b _{1,5} b _{0,0} b _{1,0} b _{2,0} b _{0,1} b _{1,1} b _{2,1} b _{0,2} b _{1,2} b _{2,2} b _{0,3} b _{2,4} b _{0,5} b _{1,5}	
B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1	. bo o bo 4 b4 4 bo 4
B ₂ : 1 1 0 1 1 0 B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 B ₀ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 b _{0,0} b _{1,0} b _{2,0} b _{0,1} b _{1,1} b _{2,1} b _{0,2} b _{1,2} b _{2,2} b _{0,3} B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 b _{2,4} b _{0,5} b _{1,5}	3 2,3 0,4 1,4 2,4
B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	
5 B ₀ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 b _{0,0} b _{1,0} b _{2,0} b _{0,1} b _{1,1} b _{2,1} b _{0,2} b _{1,2} b _{2,2} b _{0,3} b _{2,4} b _{0,5} b _{1,5}	
B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 b _{2,4} b _{0,5} b _{1,5}	- h h h h
	3 51,3 52,3 50,4 51,4
IR · 1 1 1 1 1 ()	
B ₂ : 1 1 1 1 1 0 B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0	
	h h h h
6 B ₀ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 b _{0,0} b _{1,0} b _{2,0} b _{0,1} b _{1,1} b _{2,1} b _{0,2} b _{1,2} b _{2,2} b _{0,3}	3 ^D 1,3 ^D 2,3 ^D 0,4 ^D 1,4
B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 b _{2,4} b _{0,5} b _{1,5} b _{2,5}	
B ₂ : 111111	
B ₃ : 0 0 0 0 0 0	h h h h
7 B ₀ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 b _{0,0} b _{1,0} b _{2,0} b _{3,0} b _{0,1} b _{1,1} b _{2,1} b _{0,2} b _{1,2} b _{2,3}	2 00,3 01,3 02,3 00,4
B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 b _{1,4} b _{2,4} b _{0,5} b _{1,5} b _{2,5}	
B ₂ : 1 1 1 1 1 1	
B ₃ : 100000	L L '
8 B ₀ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 b _{0,0} b _{1,0} b _{2,0} b _{3,0} b _{0,1} b _{1,1} b _{2,1} b _{0,2} b _{1,2} b _{2,2}	₂ v _{0,3} v _{1,3} v _{2,3} v _{3,3}
B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 b _{0,4} b _{1,4} b _{2,4} b _{0,5} b _{1,5} b _{2,5}	
B ₂ : 1 1 1 1 1 1	
B ₃ : 1 0 0 1 0 0	
9 B ₀ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 b _{0,0} b _{1,0} b _{2,0} b _{3,0} b _{0,1} b _{1,1} b _{2,1} b _{3,1} b _{0,2} b _{1,3}	$_{2}$ $b_{2,2}$ $b_{0,3}$ $b_{1,3}$ $b_{2,3}$
B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 b _{3,3} b _{0,4} b _{1,4} b _{2,4} b _{0,5} b _{1,5} b _{2,5}	
B ₂ : 1 1 1 1 1 1	
B ₃ : 1 1 0 1 0 0	
10 B ₀ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 b _{0,0} b _{1,0} b _{2,0} b _{3,0} b _{0,1} b _{1,1} b _{2,1} b _{3,1} b _{0,2} b _{1,2}	$_{2}$ $b_{2,2}$ $b_{0,3}$ $b_{1,3}$ $b_{2,3}$
B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 b _{3,3} b _{0,4} b _{1,4} b _{2,4} b _{0,5} b _{1,5} b _{2,5} , b _{3,5} ,	
B ₂ : 1 1 1 1 1 1	
B ₃ : 1 1 0 1 0 1	
11 B ₀ : 1 1 1 1 1 1 b _{0,0} b _{1,0} b _{2,0} b _{3,0} b _{0,1} b _{1,1} b _{2,1} b _{3,1} b _{0,2} b _{1,2}	$_{2}b_{2,2,}b_{3,2,}b_{0,3}$
B ₁ : 1 1 1 1 1 1	
B ₂ : 1 1 1 1 1 1	
B ₃ : 1 1 1 1 0 1	

The puncturing shall be performed as follows:

SM:

The higher protected part of the transmitted sequence is punctured according to table 65 resulting in $(v_{p,0}...v_{p,2N_1-1})$.

The lower protected part of the transmitted sequence is punctured according to table 65 resulting in $(v_{p,2N_1}...v_{p,2(N_1+N_2)-13-r_p})$.

The tailbits of the transmitted sequence is punctured according to table 66 resulting in $v_{p,2(N_1+N_2)-12-r_p} \cdots v_{p,2(N_1+N_2)-1}$.

NOTE 1: If there is only one protection level the higher protected part is absent.

HMsym:

The VSPP part of the transmitted sequence is punctured according to table 65 resulting in $(v_{0,0} \dots v_{0,2(N_1+N_2)-13-r_0})$.

The tailbits for the VSPP part of the transmitted sequence is punctured according to table 66 resulting in $(v_{0,2(N_1+N_2)-12-r_0} \cdots v_{0,2(N_1+N_2)-1})$.

The higher protected part of the SPP part of the transmitted sequence is punctured according to table 65 resulting in $(v_{p,0}...v_{p,2N,-1})$ for $p \in \{1,2\}$.

The lower protected part of the transmitted sequence is punctured according to table 65 resulting in $v_{p,2N_1} \dots v_{p,2(N_1+N_2)-13-r_p}$ for $p \in \{1,2\}$.

The tailbits for the SPP part of the transmitted sequence is punctured according to table 66 resulting in $(v_{p,2(N_1+N_2)-12-r_n}...v_{p,2(N_1+N_2)-1})$ for $Y(p) = (y_{p,0}, y_{p,1}, y_{p,2},...y_{p,2(N_1+N_2)-1})$.

NOTE 2: If there is only one protection level the higher protected part is absent.

HMmix:

The VSPP part of the transmitted sequence is punctured according to table 65 resulting in $\left(v_{0,0}^{\text{Re}}...v_{0,2(N_1+N_2)-13-\eta_1}^{\text{Re}}\right)$.

The tailbits for the VSPP part of the transmitted sequence is punctured according to table 66 resulting in $\left(v_{0,2(N_1+N_2)-12-\eta_0}^{\text{Re}} \dots v_{0,2(N_1+N_2)-1}^{\text{Re}} \right).$

The real component of the higher protected part of the SPP part of the transmitted sequence is punctured according to table 65 resulting in $\left(v_{p,0}^{\text{Re}}\dots v_{p,2N_1-1}^{\text{Re}}\right)$ for $Xin=2N_2$.

The real component of the lower protected part of the transmitted sequence is punctured according to table 65 resulting in $\left(v_{p,2N_1}^{\text{Re}}\dots v_{p,2(N_1+N_2)-13-r_p}^{\text{Re}}\right)$ for $p\in\{1,2\}$.

The tailbits for the SPP part of the transmitted sequence is punctured according to table 66 resulting in $\left(v_{p,2(N_1+N_2)-12-r_p}^{\text{Re}}...v_{p,2(N_1+N_2)-1}^{\text{Re}}\right)$.

NOTE 3: If there is only one protection level the higher protected part is absent.

The imaginary component of the higher protected part of the SP part of the transmitted sequence is punctured according to table 44 resulting in $\left(v_{p,0}^{\text{Im}}\dots v_{p,2N_1-1}^{\text{Im}}\right)$ for $p\in\{0,1,2\}$.

The imaginary component of the lower protected part of the transmitted sequence is punctured according to table 65 resulting in $\left(v_{p,2N_1}^{\text{Im}}\dots v_{p,2(N_1+N_2)-13-r_p}^{\text{Im}}\right)$ for $p\in\{0,1,2\}$.

The tailbits for the SP part of the transmitted sequence is punctured according to table 66 resulting in $\left(v_{p,2(N_1+N_2)-12-r_p}^{\text{Im}} \dots v_{p,2(N_1+N_2)-1}^{\text{Im}} \right) \text{ for } p \in \left\{0,1,2\right\}.$

NOTE 4: If there is only one protection level the higher protected part is absent.

7.3.3 Bit Interleaving

Bit-wise interleaving shall be applied for some of the levels of the coding scheme according to figures 18 to 21. The same basic algorithm which results in a pseudo random bit ordering shall be used independently for the FAC, SDC and MSC.

The permutation $\Pi_p(i)$ is obtained from the following relations:

for 64-QAM:
$$t_1 = 13$$
, $t_2 = 21$
for 16-QAM: $t_0 = 13$, $t_1 = 21$
for 4-QAM: $t_0 = 21$
 $p \in \{0,1,2\}$
 $s = 2^{\lceil \log 2(x_{in}) \rceil}$
 $q = s/4-1$

the number of input bits x_{in} is defined below

and means round towards plus infinity

$$\Pi_p(0)=0\;;$$

for
$$i = 1, 2, ..., x_{in} - 1$$
:

$$\Pi_p(i) = \left(t_p \ \Pi_p(i-1) + q\right) \left(\text{mod } s\right);$$
while $\Pi_p(i) \ge x_{in}$:

$$\Pi_p(i) = \left(t_p \ \Pi_p(i) + q\right) \left(\text{mod } s\right).$$

7.3.3.1 FAC

The block size shall be in every case the same for the interleaver I_p with p = 0 only. The number of elements for the bit interleaver x_{in} equals $2N_{FAC}$. The input vector is defined by:

$$V(p) = (v_{p,0}, v_{p,1}, v_{p,2}, ... v_{p,2} N_{FAC} - 1)$$

The interleaved output vector is the subset of the permutations $\Pi_p(i)$ defined by:

$$Y(p) = (y_{p,0}, y_{p,1}, y_{p,2}, ..., y_{p,2N_{EAC}} - 1)$$

The output elements are selected from the input elements according to:

$$y_{p,i} = v_{p,\Pi_p(i)}.$$

7.3.3.2 SDC

The block size shall be the same for each interleaver I_p . The number of elements per bit interleaver x_{in} equals $2N_{SDC}$. For each bit interleaver, the input vector is defined by:

$$V(p) = (v_{p,0}, v_{p,1}, v_{p,2}, ..., v_{p,2N_{SDC}-1})$$

The interleaved output vector is the subset of the permutations $\Pi_n(i)$ defined by:

$$Y(p) = (y_{p,0}, y_{p,1}, y_{p,2}, ... y_{p,2N_{SDC}-1})$$

The output elements are selected from the input elements according to

$$y_{p,i} = v_{p,\Pi_p(i)} \,.$$

7.3.3.3 MSC

SM and HMsym:

The block size shall be the same for each interleaver I_p , but shall be dependent on the robustness mode, spectrum occupancy and the constellation. The number of elements per bit interleaver equals $2(N_1 + N_2)$. For each bit interleaver, the input vector is defined by:

$$V(p) = \left(v_{p,0}, v_{p,1}, v_{p,2}, \dots v_{p,2(N_1+N_2)-1}\right) = \left(v_{1,p,0}, v_{1,p,1}, \dots v_{1,p,2N_1-1}, v_{2,p,0}, v_{2,p,1}, \dots v_{2,p,2N_2-1}\right)$$

The interleaved output vector is the subset of the two permutations $\Pi_p\left(i\right)$ defined by:

$$Y(p) = \left(y_{p,0}, y_{p,1}, y_{p,2}, ... y_{p,2(N_1 + N_2) - 1}\right) = \left(y_{1,p,0}, y_{1,p,1}, ... y_{1,p,2N_1 - 1}, y_{2,p,0}, y_{2,p,1}, ... y_{2,p,2N_2 - 1}\right)$$

The two parts with different protection levels shall not overlap in the interleaving process. Therefore the interleaved lower protected part shall be appended to the interleaved higher protected part where the output elements are selected from the input elements according to

$$y_{1,p,i} = v_{1,p,\Pi_p(i)}$$
 and $y_{2,p,i} = v_{2,p,\Pi_p(i)}$

for each part respectively.

The number of input bits used for the permutation for the higher protected part shall be $x_{in} = 2N_1$, and for the lower protected part shall be $x_{in} = 2N_2$.

HMmix:

The block size shall be the same for each interleaver I_p^{Re} and I_p^{Im} but shall be dependent on the robustness mode, spectrum occupancy and the constellation. The number of elements per bit interleaver equals $(N_1 + N_2)$. For each bit interleaver, the input vector for the real and imaginary components are defined by:

$$\begin{split} V^{\text{Re}}(p) = & \left(v_{p,0}^{\text{Re}}, v_{p,1}^{\text{Re}}, v_{p,2}^{\text{Re}}, ... v_{p,N_1+N_2-1}^{\text{Re}} \right) = \left(v_{1,p,0}^{\text{Re}}, v_{1,p,1}^{\text{Re}}, ... v_{1,p,N_1-1}^{\text{Re}}, v_{2,p,0}^{\text{Re}}, v_{2,p,1}^{\text{Re}}, ... v_{2,p,N_2-1}^{\text{Re}} \right) \text{ or } \\ V^{\text{Im}}(p) = & \left(v_{p,0}^{\text{Im}}, v_{p,1}^{\text{Im}}, v_{p,2}^{\text{Im}}, ... v_{p,N_1+N_2-1}^{\text{Im}} \right) = \left(v_{1,p,0}^{\text{Im}}, v_{1,p,1}^{\text{Im}}, ... v_{1,p,N_1-1}^{\text{Im}}, v_{2,p,0}^{\text{Im}}, v_{2,p,1}^{\text{Im}}, ... v_{2,p,N_2-1}^{\text{Im}} \right) \text{ respectively.} \end{split}$$

The interleaved output vector for the real and imaginary components are the subset of the two permutations Π_p (i) defined by:

$$Y^{\mathrm{Re}}(p) = \left(y_{p,0}^{\mathrm{Re}}, y_{p,1}^{\mathrm{Re}}, y_{p,2}^{\mathrm{Re}}, \dots y_{p,N_1+N_2-1}^{\mathrm{Re}}\right) = \left(y_{1,p,0}^{\mathrm{Re}}, y_{1,p,1}^{\mathrm{Re}}, \dots y_{1,p,N_1-1}^{\mathrm{Re}}, y_{2,p,0}^{\mathrm{Re}}, y_{2,p,1}^{\mathrm{Re}}, \dots y_{2,p,N_2-1}^{\mathrm{Re}}\right) \text{ or }$$

$$Y^{\mathrm{Im}}(p) = \left(y_{p,0}^{\mathrm{Im}}, y_{p,1}^{\mathrm{Im}}, y_{p,2}^{\mathrm{Im}}, \dots y_{p,N_1+N_2-1}^{\mathrm{Im}}\right) = \left(y_{1,p,0}^{\mathrm{Im}}, y_{1,p,1}^{\mathrm{Im}}, \dots y_{1,p,N_1-1}^{\mathrm{Im}}, y_{2,p,0}^{\mathrm{Im}}, y_{2,p,1}^{\mathrm{Im}}, \dots y_{2,p,N_2-1}^{\mathrm{Im}}\right) \text{ respectively}.$$

The two parts with different protection levels shall not overlap in the interleaving process Therefore the interleaved lower protected part shall be appended to the interleaved higher protected part where the output elements are selected from the input elements according to

$$y_{1,p,i}^{\text{Re}} = v_{1,p,\Pi(i)}^{\text{Re}}, \ y_{2,p,i}^{\text{Re}} = v_{2,p,\Pi(i)}^{\text{Re}}, \ y_{1,p,i}^{\text{Im}} = v_{1,p,\Pi(i)}^{\text{Im}} \ \text{and} \ y_{2,p,i}^{\text{Im}} = v_{2,p,\Pi(i)}^{\text{Im}}$$

for each part respectively.

The number of input bits used for the permutation for the higher protected parts shall be $x_{in} = N_1$, and for the lower protected parts shall be $x_{in} = N_2$.

7.4 Signal constellations and mapping

The mapping strategy for each OFDM cell is dependent of the assignment to the channel (FAC, SDC, MSC) and the robustness mode. All data cells are either 4-QAM, 16-QAM or 64-QAM.

The default method for mapping shall be performed according to figures 23 to 27.

The y_i' denote the bits representing a complex modulation symbol z.

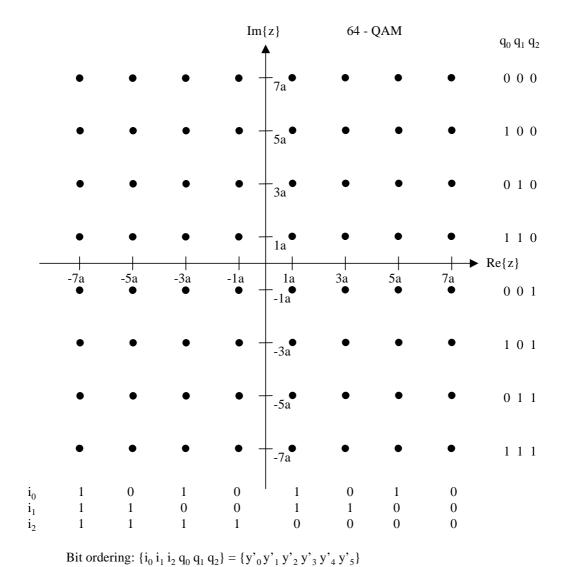
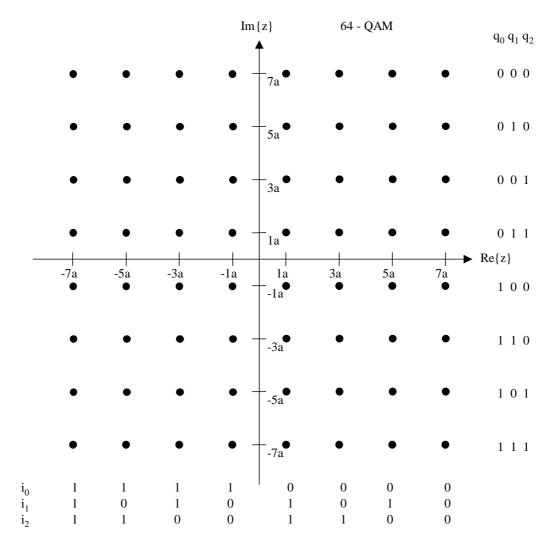


Figure 23: SM 64-QAM mapping with corresponding bit pattern



Bit ordering: $\{i_0 i_1 i_2 q_0 q_1 q_2\} = \{y'_0 y'_1 y'_2 y'_3 y'_4 y'_5\}$

Figure 24: HMsym 64-QAM mapping with corresponding bit pattern

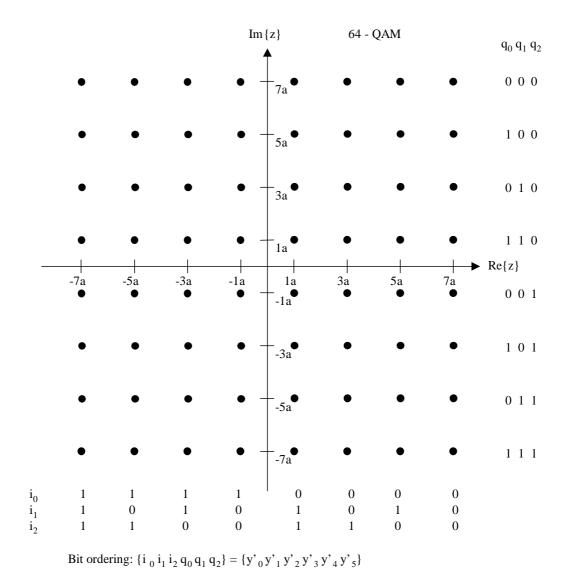
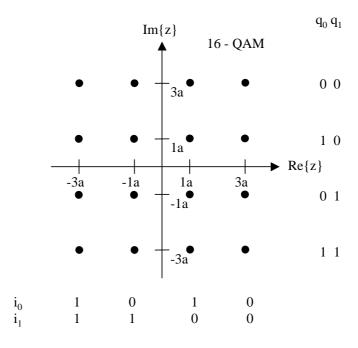
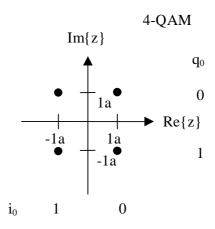


Figure 25: HMmix 64-QAM mapping with corresponding bit pattern



Bit ordering: $\{i_0 i_1 q_0 q_1\} = \{y'_0 y'_1 y'_2 y'_3\}$

Figure 26: SM 16-QAM mapping with corresponding bit pattern



Bit ordering: $\{i_0 \ q_0\} = \{y'_0 \ y'_1\}$

Figure 27: SM 4-QAM mapping with corresponding bit pattern

NOTE: Left hand bit is the first in time

For 64-QAM, the normalization factor is $a = \frac{1}{\sqrt{42}}$.

For 16-QAM, the normalization factor is $a = \frac{1}{\sqrt{10}}$.

For 4-QAM, the normalization factor is $a = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$.

The data stream at the output of the interleaver consists of a number of bit words. These are mapped onto one signal point in the signal diagram according a complex number z. For SM and HMsym the 64-QAM diagram shall be used according figure 23 and 24 respectively. The bits shall be mapped accordingly:

$$(y_0, y_1, y_2, y_3, y_4, y_5) = (y_{0,0}, y_{1,0}, y_{2,0}, y_{0,1}, y_{1,1}, y_{2,1}).$$

For HMmix the 64-QAM diagram shall be used according to figure 25. The bits shall be mapped accordingly:

The 16-QAM diagram shall be used according figure 26. The bits shall be mapped accordingly:

$$(y_0, y_1, y_2, y_3) = (y_{0,0}, y_{1,0}, y_{0,1}, y_{1,1})$$

The 4-QAM diagram shall be used according figure 27. The bits shall be mapped accordingly:

$$(y_0, y_1) = (y_{0,0}, y_{0,1})$$

7.5 Application of coding to the channels

7.5.1 Coding the MSC

The MSC may use either 64-QAM or 16-QAM mapping. 64-QAM provides high spectral efficiency whereas 16-QAM provides a more robust error performance. In each case, a range of code rates is available to provide the most appropriate level of error correction for a given transmission. The available combinations of constellation and code rate provide a large degree of flexibility over a wide range of transmission channels. Unequal error protection can be used to provide two levels of protection for the MSC. For the case of 64-QAM, hierarchical modulation may be used to provide a third level of error robustness for a part of the MSC.

7.5.1.1 SM

Two protection levels within one multiplex frame are possible resulting in the use of two overall code rates. The number of input bits *LMUX* per multiplex frame shall be calculated with the formulas of clause 7.2.

The MSC shall be encoded according to clause 7.3. The overall code rates and code rates for each level are defined in tables 67 and 68. The protection level is signalled in the multiplex description data entity of the SDC (see clause 6.4.3.1).

Two overall code rates are defined for the 16-QAM as follows:

Table 67: Code rate combinations for the MSC with 16-QAM

Protection level	R _{all}	R_0	R ₁	RY _{lcm}
0	0,5	1/3	2/3	3
1	0,62	1/2	3/4	4

Four overall code rates are defined for 64-QAM as follows:

Table 68: Code rate combinations for the MSC with 64-QAM

Protection level	R _{all}	R_0	R ₁	R_2	RY _{lcm}
0	0,5	1/4	1/2	3/4	4
1	0,6	1/3	2/3	4/5	15
2	0,71	1/2	3/4	7/8	8
3	0,78	2/3	4/5	8/9	45

NOTE: These code rates are also used for the imaginary part of HMmix.

One or two overall code rates shall be applied to one multiplex frame. When using two overall code rates, both shall belong to the same constellation.

Annex J provides the number of input bits per multiplex frame for EEP.

7.5.1.2 HMsym

Two protection levels are possible resulting in the use of two overall code rates. The number of input bits *LMUX* per multiplex frame shall be calculated with the formulas of clause 7.2.

The MSC shall be encoded according to clause 7.3. The overall code rates and code rates for each level for the SPP are defined in table 69 and for the VSPP in table 49. The protection level is signalled in the multiplex description data entity of the SDC (see clause 6.4.3.1).

Four overall code rates are defined for the SPP as follows:

Table 69: Code rate combinations for the SPP of MSC with HMsym 64-QAM

Pro	tection level	R _{all}	R ₁	R ₂	RY _{lcm}
	0	0,45	3/10	3/5	10
	1	0,55	4/11	8/11	11
	2	0,72	4/7	7/8	56
	3	0,78	2/3	8/9	9
NOTE:	These code ra of HMmix.	ites are als	o used	for the 1	eal part

Four overall code rates are defined independently for the VSPP as follows:

Table 70: Code rate combinations for the VSPP of MSC with HMsym 64-QAM

Protection level		R_0
	0	1/2
	1	4/7
2		3/5
3		2/3
NOTE: These code rates are also used for the real part of HMmix.		

Annex J provides the number of input bits per multiplex frame for EEP.

7.5.1.3 HMmix

Two protection levels are possible resulting in the use of two overall code rates. The number of input bits *LMUX* per multiplex frame shall be calculated with the formulas of clause 7.2.

The MSC shall be encoded according to clause 7.3. The protection level is signalled in the multiplex description data entity of the SDC (see clause 6.4.3.1).

Four overall code rates are defined for the SPP as shown in table 71 and the four possible code rates for the VSPP are defined independently as shown in table 70.

Table 71: Code rate combinations for the SPP of MSC with HMmix 64-QAM

Protection level	R _{all}	R_0^{lm}	R ₁ Re	R_1^{lm}	R ₂ Re	R_2^{lm}	RY _{lcm}
0	0,48	1/4	3/10	1/2	3/5	3/4	20
1	0,58	1/3	4/11	2/3	8/11	4/5	165
2	0,71	1/2	4/7	3/4	7/8	7/8	56
3	0,78	2/3	2/3	4/5	8/9	8/9	45

Annex J provides the number of input bits per multiplex frame for EEP.

7.5.2 Coding the SDC

The SDC may use either 16-QAM or 4-QAM mapping. 16-QAM provides greater capacity whereas 4-QAM provides a more robust error performance. In each case, a fixed code rate is applied.

The constellation should be chosen with respect to the MSC parameters to provide more robustness for the SDC than for the MSC.

The number of input bits L_{SDC} per SDC block is calculated as given in clause 7.2.

For 16-QAM the combination given in table 72 shall be used.

Table 72: Code rate combinations for the SDC with 16-QAM

R _{all}	R_0	R ₁
0,5	1/3	2/3

For 4-QAM the code rate given in table 73 shall be used.

Table 73: Code rate for the SDC with 4-QAM

R _{all}	R_0
0,5	1/2

Annex J provides the number of input bits per SDC block.

Error detection with a CRC is described in clause 6.

7.5.3 Coding the FAC

The FAC shall use 4-QAM mapping. A fixed code rate shall be applied.

The number of input bits L_{FAC} per FAC block is calculated as given in clause 7.2.

The code rate given in table 74 shall be used.

Table 74: Code rate for the FAC

Ī	R _{all}	R_0
ſ	0,6	3/5

Error detection with a CRC is described in clause 6.

7.6 MSC Cell Interleaving

A cell-wise interleaving shall be applied to the QAM symbols (cells) of the MSC after multilevel encoding with the possibility to choose low or high interleaving depth (denoted here as short or long interleaving) according to the predicted propagation conditions. The basic interleaver parameters are adapted to the size of a multiplex frame which corresponds to N_{MUX} cells.

For propagation channels with moderate time-selective behaviour (typical ground wave propagation in LF and MF) the short interleaving will provide sufficient time- and frequency diversity for proper operation of the decoding process in the receiver (spreading of error bursts). The same block interleaving scheme as used for bit interleaving in the multilevel encoder (see clause 7.3.3) is always applied to the N_{MUX} cells of a multiplex frame.

The input vector of the block interleaver corresponding to the N_{MUX} QAM cells $z_{n,i}$ of multiplex frame n is given by

$$\mathbf{Z}_n = \left(z_{n,0}, z_{n,1}, z_{n,2}, \dots, z_{n, N_{\text{MUV}}-1}\right)$$

The output vector with the same number of cells or elements, respectively, is given by

$$\hat{\mathbf{Z}}_n = \left(\hat{z}_{n,0}, \hat{z}_{n,1}, \hat{z}_{n,2}, \dots, \hat{z}_{n,N_{\text{MIX}}-1}\right)$$

where the output elements are selected from the input elements according to

$$\hat{z}_{n,i} = z_{n,\Pi(i)}.$$

The permutation $\Pi(i)$ is obtained from the following relations:

$$s = 2^{\lceil \log 2(N_{MUX}) \rceil}, \lceil \rceil$$
 means round towards plus infinity;

$$q = s / 4 - 1$$
;

 $t_0 = 5$;

 $\Pi(0) = 0$;

for $i = 1, 2, ..., N_{MUX} - 1$:

$$\Pi(i) = (t_0 \ \Pi(i-1) + q) \pmod{s};$$

while $\Pi(i) \ge N_{MUX}$:

$$\Pi(i) = (t_0 \ \Pi(i) + q) \pmod{s}$$
.

For severe time- and frequency-selective channels as being typical for signal transmissions in the HF short wave frequency bands the interleaving depth can be increased by an additional simple convolutional interleaving scheme. For this the interleaving depth D is defined in integer multiples of multiplex frames. As a good trade-off between performance and processing delay a value of D=5 has been chosen.

The output vector for long interleaving with N_{MUX} cells carrying complex QAM symbols is computed in almost the same way as for short interleaving. The only exception is that the permutation is based not only on the current but also on the last D-1 multiplex frames. The permutation $\Pi(i)$ as defined before is used again to determine the relation between the indices within the output vector $\hat{\mathbf{Z}}_n$ and the D input vectors $\mathbf{Z}_n, \mathbf{Z}_{n-1}, \dots, \mathbf{Z}_{n-D+1}$.

The output elements are selected from the input elements according to

$$\hat{z}_{n,\,i}=z_{n-\Gamma(i),\,\Pi(i)}$$

For given value i the selection of the input vector number $n - \Gamma(i)$ for the correspondent element $\Pi(i)$ is done with the following formula:

$$\Gamma(i) = i \pmod{D}$$
 for $i = 0, 1, 2, ..., N_{MUX} - 1$.

Taking into consideration the transmission of the full content of a multiplex frame the overall delay of the pure interleaving/deinterleaving process is given by approximately 2×400 ms, i.e. 800 ms, for the short interleaving. In the case of the long interleaving it corresponds to about 2,4 s. In addition to that the delay is increased during transmission due to the fact that the SDC block is inserted at the beginning of a transmission super frame. With a depth of D=5 multiplex frames for long interleaving the maximum additional increase in delay is given by the time duration of two SDC blocks.

7.7 Mapping of MSC cells on the transmission super frame structure

The content of three consecutive interleaved multiplex frames (with N_{MUX} QAM cells each) is mapped onto a transmission super frame, i.e. the corresponding number N_{SFU} of useful MSC cells is fixed as an integer multiple of 3. Due to the fact that the number of FAC and synchronization cells is varying from OFDM symbol to OFDM symbol a small loss N_L of 1 or 2 cells can occur compared with the number of available cells in a transmission super frame which is given by

$$N_{SFA} = N_{SFU} + N_L = 3 \times N_{MUX} + N_L$$

Tables 75 to 78 give the values for the different robustness modes and bandwidths.

Parameters Spectrum occupancy 0 1 4 5 2 3 Number of available MSC 3 778 7 897 8 877 16 394 18 354 4 268 cells per super frame N_{SFA} Number of useful MSC cells 3 777 4 266 7 896 8 877 16 392 18 354 per super frame N_{SFU} Number of MSC cells per 1 259 1 422 2 632 2 9 5 9 5 464 6 1 1 8 multiplex frame N_{MUX} Cell loss per super frame N_I 1 2 2 0 1 0

Table 75: Number of QAM cells for MSC for Mode A

Parameters	Spectrum occupancy						
	0	1	2	3	4	5	
Number of available MSC cells per super frame N _{SFA}	2 900	3 330	6 153	7 013	12 747	14 323	
Number of useful MSC cells per super frame N _{SFU}	2 898	3 330	6 153	7 011	12 747	14 322	
Number of MSC cells per multiplex frame N _{MUX}	966	1 110	2 051	2 337	4 249	4 774	
Cell loss per super frame N _L	2	0	0	2	0	1	

Table 77: Number of QAM cells for MSC for Mode C

Parameters	Spectrum occupancy					
	0	1	2	3	4	5
Number of available MSC cells per super frame N _{SFA}	-	-	-	5 532	-	11 603
Number of useful MSC cells per super frame N _{SFU}	-	-	-	5 532	-	11 601
Number of MSC cells per multiplex frame N _{MUX}	-	-	-	1 844	-	3 867
Cell loss per super frame N _L	-	-	-	0	-	2

1

Spectrum occupancy **Parameters** 0 1 4 5 Number of available MSC 3 679 7 819 cells per super frame N_{SFA} Number of useful MSC cells 3 678 7 818 per super frame N_{SFU} Number of MSC cells per 1 226 2 606 multiplex frame N_{MUX}

Table 78: Number of QAM cells for MSC for Mode D

So the overall data vector for the useful MSC cells in transmission super frame m can be described by

$$\begin{split} \mathbf{S}_{m} &= \left(s_{m,0}, s_{m,1}, s_{m,2}, \dots, s_{m, \mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{SFU}}-1}\right) \\ &= \left(\hat{\mathbf{Z}}_{3^*m}, \ \hat{\mathbf{Z}}_{3^*m+1}, \hat{\mathbf{Z}}_{3^*m+2}\right) \\ &= \left(\hat{z}_{3^*m,0}, \hat{z}_{3^*m,1}, \dots, \hat{z}_{3^*m, \mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{MUX}}-1}, \hat{z}_{3^*m+1,0}, \hat{z}_{3^*m+1,1}, \dots, \hat{z}_{3^*m+1, \mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{MUX}}-1}, \hat{z}_{3^*m+2,0}, \hat{z}_{3^*m+2,1}, \dots, \hat{z}_{3^*m+2, \mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{MUX}}-1}\right). \end{split}$$

In the case that N_L is unequal to 0 one or two dummy cells, i.e. $(\tilde{z}_{m,0})$ or $(\tilde{z}_{m,0}, \tilde{z}_{m,1})$, are attached at the end of S_m . Their complex values (i.e. the corresponding QAM symbols) shall be as defined in table 79.

Table 79: QAM symbols for MSC dummy cells

Number of dummy cells N _L per	Complex values of the dummy cells (QAM symbols)		
transmission super frame	$\widetilde{z}_{m,0}$	$\widetilde{z}_{m,1}$	
1	a*(1 + j 1)		
2	a*(1 + j 1)	a*(1 - j 1)	

The value of a in table 79 is dependent on the signal constellation chosen for the MSC (see clause 7.4).

8 Transmission structure

Cell loss per super frame N_I

8.1 Transmission frame structure and modes

The transmitted signal is organized in transmission super frames.

Each transmission super frame consists of three transmission frames.

Each transmission frame has duration T_f, and consists of N_s OFDM symbols.

Each OFDM symbol is constituted by a set of K carriers and transmitted with a duration T_s.

The spacing between adjacent carriers is $1/T_{\rm u}$.

The symbol duration is the sum of two parts:

- a useful part with duration Tu:
- a guard interval with duration T_g.

The guard interval consists in a cyclic continuation of the useful part, T_u , and is inserted before it.

The OFDM symbols in a transmission frame are numbered from 0 to $\rm N_{\rm s}$ - 1.

All symbols contain data and reference information.

Since the OFDM signal comprises many separately modulated carriers, each symbol can in turn be considered to be divided into cells, each cell corresponding to the modulation carried on one carrier during one symbol.

An OFDM frame contains:

- pilot cells;
- control cells;
- data cells.

The pilot cells can be used for frame, frequency and time synchronization, channel estimation, and robustness mode identification.

The transmitted signal is described by the following expression:

$$x(t) = \text{Re}\left\{e^{j2\pi f_R t} \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} \sum_{s=0}^{N_s - 1} \sum_{k=K_{\min}}^{K_{\max}} c_{r,s,k} \, \psi_{r,s,k}(t)_k\right\}$$

where

$$\psi_{r,s,k}(t) = \begin{cases} e^{j2\pi \frac{k}{T_u}(t-Tg-sT_s-N_s rT_s)} \\ e^{(s+N_s r)T_s \le t \le (s+N_s r+1)T_s} \\ 0 & otherwise \end{cases}$$

and:

Ns number of OFDM symbols per transmission frame;

k denotes the carrier number (= K_{min} , ..., K_{max});

s denotes the OFDM symbol number (= $0... N_s-1$);

r denotes the transmission frame number (= 0...infinity);

K is the number of transmitted carriers ($\leq K_{max} - K_{min}$);

Ts is the symbol duration;

T_n is the duration of the useful part of a symbol;

 T_g is the duration of the guard interval;

f_R is the reference frequency of the RF signal;

c_{r.s.k} complex cell value for carrier k in symbol s of frame number r.

The $c_{r,s,k}$ values depend on the type of cell, as defined below.

For data/control cells (MSC, SDC, FAC), $c_{r,s,k} = z$ where z is the constellation point for each cell as given by the mappings defined in clause 7.

For each reference cell, a defined phase and amplitude is transmitted, $c_{r,s,k} = a_{s,k} U_{s,k}$, where

 $a_{s,k}$ is the amplitude, which always takes one of the values $\{1,\sqrt{2},2\}$, and

 $U_{s,k} = e^{j2\pi\vartheta_{s,k}}$ is a unit-amplitude term of phase $\vartheta_{s,k}$.

 $a_{s,k}$ and $\vartheta_{s,k}$ are defined for each type of reference cell in clause 8.4.

8.2 Propagation-related OFDM parameters

OFDM parameters must be chosen to match propagation conditions and the coverage area that the operator wants to serve.

Various sets of OFDM parameters are therefore defined for different conditions of propagation and their parameter values are listed in table 80.

Robustness Duration Tu Carrier **Duration of Duration of** Tg/Tu Number of mode spacing 1/T_u guard interval symbol symbols per Ts = Tu + TgTg frame N_S 2,66 ms 26,66 ms Α 24 ms 41 ^{2/3} Hz 1/9 15 В 21.33 ms 5.33 ms 26.66 ms 1/4 15 46 ^{7/8} Hz С 5,33 ms 4/11 14,66 ms 68 ^{2/11} Hz 20 ms 20 D 9,33 ms 107 ^{1/7} Hz 7,33 ms 16,66 ms 11/14 24

Table 80: Numerical values of the OFDM parameters

8.3 Signal bandwidth related parameters

8.3.1 Parameter definition

The OFDM parameters depend upon the available frequency bandwidth, the number of carriers K, and their location with respect to the reference frequency (named DC, in relation with the traditional carrier used in AM analogue transmissions).

The Spectrum occupancy defines the nominal channel bandwidth. The group of carriers carrying the FAC is always to the right (higher in frequency) with respect to the reference frequency, f_R , which is an integer multiple of 1 kHz. Table 81 relates the spectrum occupancy parameter, signalled in the FAC (see clause 6.3), to the nominal channel bandwidth, and figures 28 and 29 show the position of the carriers.

Table 81: Relationship between spectrum occupancy parameter and channel bandwidth

		Spectrum occupancy				
	0	1	2	3	4	5
Channel bandwidth (kHz)	4.5	5	9	10	18	20

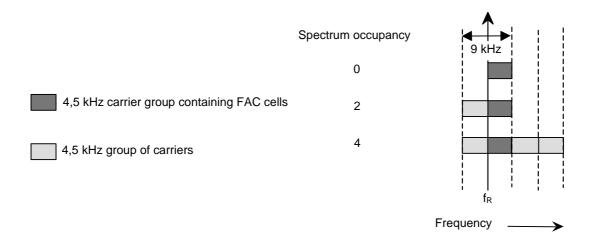


Figure 28: Spectrum occupancy for 9 kHz channels

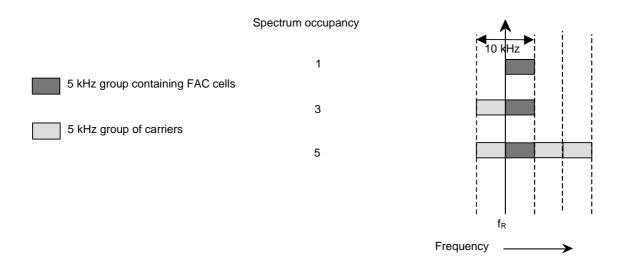


Figure 29: Spectrum occupancy for 10 kHz channels

The carriers are indexed by $k \in [K_{min}, K_{max}]$, k = 0 being the DC carrier and determined by the following values depending on the choice made and related to the occupied bandwidth.

Carriers with k < 0 are said to be to the left of DC, and k > 0, to the right of DC.

Table 82 presents the lower and upper carrier numbers for each robustness mode and nominal bandwidth.

Table 82: Carrier numbers for each mode

Robustness	oustness Carrier		Spectrum occupancy					
mode		0	1	2	3	4	5	
Α	K _{min}	2	2	-102	-114	-98	-110	
	K _{max}	102	114	102	114	314	350	
В	K _{min}	1	1	-91	-103	-87	-99	
	K _{max}	91	103	91	103	279	311	
С	K _{min}	-	-	-	-69	-	-67	
	K _{max}	-	-	-	69	-	213	
D	K _{min}	-	-	-	-44	-	-43	
	K _{max}	-	-	-	44	-	135	

Depending on the mode, the DC carrier and certain carriers around DC are not used, as detailed in table 83.

Table 83: Unused carriers according to robustness mode

Robustness mode	Unused carrier(s)
Α	$k \in \{-1,0,1\}$
В	$k \in \{0\}$
С	$k \in \{0\}$
D	$k \in \{0\}$

8.3.2 Simulcast transmission

The DRM signal is designed to work in the same broadcast bands as AM signals. Simulcast transmission of services using DRM and AM can be performed by the juxtaposition of the analogue AM signal (DSB or VSB or SSB) and a DRM digital signal. Many arrangements are possible and some are illustrated in annex K.

The spectrum occupancy number relates to the DRM signal. A broadcaster may choose to signal the presence of the AM simulcast by use of the frequency information data entity in the SDC (see clause 6.4.3.4).

8.4 Pilot cells

8.4.1 Functions and derivation

Some cells within the OFDM transmission frame are modulated with known fixed phases and amplitudes.

These cells are pilot cells for channel estimation and synchronization. The positions, amplitudes and phases of these cells are carefully chosen to optimize the performance, especially the initial synchronization duration and reliability. The phases are defined, directly or indirectly, in 1 024ths of a cycle, i.e.

 $U_{s,k} = e^{j2\pi\vartheta_{s,k}} = e^{\frac{j2\pi\vartheta_{1024}[s,k]}{1024}}$, where $\vartheta_{1024}[s,k]$ takes integer values and is either explicitly tabulated or derived using integer arithmetic, as defined in the following clauses.

8.4.2 Frequency references

These cells are used by the receiver to detect the presence of the received signal and to estimate its frequency offset. They may also be used for channel estimation and various tracking processes.

8.4.2.1 Cell positions

Frequency references are located at frequencies which are common to all the system variants.

There are three frequency references, which are 750 Hz, 2 250 Hz, and 3 000 Hz as referenced to the DC carrier, as defined in table 84.

Table 84: Carrier numbers for frequency references

Robustness mode	Carrier numbers
A	18, 54, 72
В	16, 48, 64
C	11, 33, 44
D	7, 21, 28

They shall be present in all symbols of each transmission frame.

8.4.2.2 Cell gains and phases

All frequency reference cells have a power gain of 2, i.e. $a_{s,k} = \sqrt{2}$, in order to optimize performances at low signal to noise ratio and be compatible with pilots with which they can share common cells.

The phases are defined as follows. For the first symbol in the frame (i.e. s = 0), the phases $\vartheta_{1024}[s, k]$ are given in table 85.

Robustness mode Carrier index, k Phase index, $\vartheta_{1024}[0,k]$ 18 Α 54 836 72 215 331 16 В 48 651 64 555 11 214 С 33 392 44 242 7 788 D 21 1 014 28 332

Table 85: Cell phases for frequency references

For subsequent symbols, the phases are chosen in order to ensure the tones are continuous, which is achieved by applying the following rules.

For robustness modes A, B and C, and carrier 28 only of mode D:

$$\vartheta_{1024}[s,k]=\vartheta_{1024}[0,k]$$

For robustness mode D, carriers 7 and 21:

 $\vartheta_{1024}[s,k] = \vartheta_{1024}[0,k]$, for even values of s, and

 $\vartheta_{1024}[s,k] = (\vartheta_{1024}[0,k]+512) \mod 1024$, for odd values of s.

NOTE: This is equivalent to the complex value $U_{s,k}$ multiplied by - 1 for odd values of s.

8.4.3 Time references

These cells are located in the first OFDM symbol of each transmission frame, i.e. s = 0.

The time reference cells are mainly used for performing ambiguity resolution since guard time correlation provides a fast and frequency insensitive estimation of time of arrival with a periodicity of one symbol. They are used for determining the first symbol of a transmission frame. They can also be used for frequency-offset estimation.

8.4.3.1 Cell positions and phases

The tables 86 to 89 define the phases of the time reference cells, and the phases of the frequency reference cells for the first symbol of the transmission frame.

 $\vartheta_{1024}[0,k]$ is the phase index in 1 024ths of a cycle.

Table 86: Phase of time reference cells for mode A

Carrier index, k	Phase index, $\vartheta_{1024}[0,k]$
17	973
18 *	205
19	717
21	264
28	357
29	357
32	952
33	440
39	856
40	88
41	88
53	68
54 *	836
55	836
56	836
60	1 008
61	1 008
63	752
71	215
72 *	215
73	727
NOTE: Carrier nur	nbers marked with an asterisk "*" also

NOTE: Carrier numbers marked with an asterisk "*" also serve as frequency references (see clause 8.4.2.1); the definitions of phase index are consistent.

Table 87: Phase of time reference cells for mode B

Carrier index k	Phase index, $\vartheta_{1024}[0,k]$
14	304
16 *	331
18	108
20	620
24	192
26	704
32	44
36	432
42	588
44	844
48 *	651
49	651
50	651
54	460
56	460
62	944
64 *	555
66	940
68	428

NOTE: Carrier numbers marked with an asterisk "*" also serve as frequency references (see clause 8.4.2.1); the definitions of phase index are consistent.

Table 88: Phase of time reference cells for mode C

Carrier index k	Phase index, $\vartheta_{1024}[0,k]$
8	722
10	466
11 *	214
12	214
14	479
16	516
18	260
22	577
24	662
28	3
30	771
32	392
33 *	392
36	37
38	37
42	474
44 *	242
45	242
46	754
serve as	numbers marked with an asterisk "*" also frequency references use 8.4.2.1); the definitions of phase index sistent.

Table 89: Phase of time reference cells for mode D

Carrier index k	Phase index, $\vartheta_{1024}[0,k]$
5	636
6	124
7 *	788
8	788
9	200
11	688
12	152
14	920
15	920
17	644
18	388
20	652
21 *	1 014
23	176
24	176
26	752
27	496
28 *	332
29	432
30	964
32	452
serve as	numbers marked with an asterisk "*" also s frequency references use 8.4.2.1); the definitions of phase index

8.4.3.2 Cell gains

All time reference cells have a power gain of 2,0 in order to optimize performance at low signal to noise ratio, i.e. $a_{s,k} = \sqrt{2}$.

8.4.4 Gain references

The gain reference cells are mainly used for coherent demodulation. These cells are scattered throughout the overall time frequency pattern and are used by the receiver to estimate the channel response.

8.4.4.1 Cell positions

In a transmission frame, for the symbol of index s (ranging from 0 to N_s - 1), carriers for which index k belongs to the subsets as defined in table 90 are gain references.

Robustness mode Subset Condition Periodicity of the gain reference pattern Α $k = 2 + 4 \times (s \mod 5) + 20 \times p$ p integer 5 symbols $k_{\min} \le k \le k_{\max}$ В $k = 1 + 2 \times (s \mod 3) + 6 \times p$ p integer 3 symbols $k_{\min} \le k \le k_{\max}$ С $k = 1 + 2 \times (s \mod 2) + 4 \times p$ p integer 2 symbols $k_{\min} \le k \le k_{\max}$ D $k = 1 + (s \mod 3) + 3 \times p$ p integer 3 symbols $k_{\min} \le k \le k_{\max}$

Table 90: Carrier indices k for gain reference cells

Carriers at the edges of the spectrum always contain gain reference cells.

Annex L gives some example figures illustrating the position of the gain reference cells.

8.4.4.2 Cell gains

Gain reference cells mostly have a power gain of 2 (i.e. $a_{s,k} = \sqrt{2}$), in order to optimize performances at low signal to noise ratio. However, gain reference cells close to the band lower and upper edges are over-boosted by a further power gain of 2 (i.e. overall power gain of 4, so that the amplitude $a_{s,k} = 2$) as defined in table 91.

Robustness Spectrum occupancy mode 0 4 1 3 5 2, 6, -102, -98, -114, -110, -98, -94, -110, -106, Α 2, 6, 98, 102 110, 114 98, 102 110, 114 310, 314 346, 350 -91, -89, В 1, 3, 1, 3, -103, -101, -87, -85, -99, -97, 89, 91 101, 103 89, 91 101, 103 277, 279 309, 311 С -69, -67, -67, -65, 67,69 211, 213 D -44, -43, -43, -42,

43, 44

134, 135

Table 91: Carrier numbers given a power boost of 4, i.e. $a_{s,k} = 2$

8.4.4.3 Cell phases

In some cases gain references fall in locations which coincide with those already defined for either frequency or time references. In these cases, the phase definitions given in clauses 8.4.2 and 8.4.3 take precedence.

In all other locations, the phases of the gain reference cells are obtained by integer arithmetic applied to small tables of values, as defined in the following procedure.

8.4.4.3.1 Procedure for calculation of cell phases

The procedure is:

First, compute values of m, n and p for each cell, where the carrier number is k and the symbol number is k:

$$n = s \mod y,$$

$$m = \lfloor s / y \rfloor$$

$$p = \frac{k - k_0 - nx}{xy}$$

x, y, and k_0 are constants which are defined for each robustness mode in table 92.

Table 92: Definition of x, y, k₀

Robustness mode	х	у	k_0
A	4	5	2
В	2	3	1
С	2	2	1
D	1	3	1

NOTE 1: The value of *p* obtained by this procedure will be an integer, as a consequence of the definition of reference cell locations in clause 8.4.4.1; while the values of *n* and *m* are integer by definition of the mathematical operations producing them.

Secondly, calculate the integer phase index by the following formula:

$$\vartheta_{1024}[s,k] = (4Z_{256}[n,m] pW_{1024}[n,m] + p^2(1+s)Q_{1024}) \mod 1024$$

 Q_{1024} and the small tables $Z_{256}[n,m]$ and $W_{1024}[n,m]$ are defined for each robustness mode in the following clauses.

NOTE 2: The values in the tables $Z_{256}[n,m]$ and $W_{1024}[n,m]$ may be represented precisely as 8- and 10-bit unsigned integers respectively; similarly Q_{1024} may be represented precisely as a 10-bit unsigned integer.

8.4.4.3.2 Robustness mode A

The $W_{1024}[n,m]$ matrix is defined as:

$$W_{1024}[n,m] = \{ \{228, 341, 455\},$$
 $\{455, 569, 683\},$
 $\{683, 796, 910\},$
 $\{910, 0, 114\},$
 $\{114, 228, 341\}\}$

The $Z_{256}[n,m]$ matrix is defined as:

$$Z_{256}[n,m] = \{ \{0, \\ \{18, \\ 106, 106\}, \\ \{122, \\ 116, 31\}, \\ \{129, \\ 129, 39\}, \\ \{33, \\ 32, 111\} \}$$

 $Q_{1024} = 36.$

8.4.4.3.3 Robustness mode B

The $W_{1024}[n,m]$ matrix is defined as:

$$W_{1024}[n,m] = \{ \{512, 0, 512, 0, 512\},$$
 $\{0, 512, 0, 512, 0\},$ $\{512, 0, 512, 0, 512\} \}$

The $Z_{256}[n,m]$ matrix is defined as:

$$Z_{256}[n,m] = \{ \{0, 57, 164, 64, 12\},$$
 {168, 255, 161, 106, 118}, {25, 232, 132, 233, 38}}

 $Q_{1024} = 12.$

8.4.4.3.4 Robustness mode C

The $W_{1024}[n,m]$ matrix is defined as:

$$W_{1024}[n,m] = \{ \{465, 372, 279, 186, 93, 0, 931, 838, 745, 652\},$$

The $Z_{256}[n,m]$ matrix is defined as:

$$Z_{256}[n,m] = \{ \{0, 76, 29, 76, 9, 190, 161, 248, 33, 108\},$$

 $\{179, 178, 83, 253, 127, 105, 101, 198, 250, 145\} \}$

 $Q_{1024} = 12.$

8.4.4.3.5 Robustness mode D

The $W_{1024}[n,m]$ matrix is defined as:

$$W_{1024}[n,m] = \{ \{366, 439, 512, 585, 658, 731, 805, 878\},$$

 $\{731, 805, 878, 951, 0, 73, 146, 219\},$
 $\{73, 146, 219, 293, 366, 439, 512, 585\}\}$

The $Z_{256}[n,m]$ matrix is defined as:

$$Z_{256}[n,m] = \{ \{0, 240, 17, 60, 220, 38, 151, 101\},$$
 {110, 7, 78, 82, 175, 150, 106, 25}, {165, 7, 252, 124, 253, 177, 197, 142}}

 $Q_{1024}=14.$

8.5 Control cells

8.5.1 General

The control cells consist of two parts:

- the Fast Access Channel (FAC), integrated in every transmission frame. It is used to quickly obtain the necessary information for the receiver to be able to demodulate the DRM signal;
- the Service Description Channel (SDC), repeated every transmission super-frame. It contains all the additional information that describes the services currently available. The SDC is also used for Alternative Frequency Switching (AFS).

Figure 30 describes the time-frequency location of these signals.

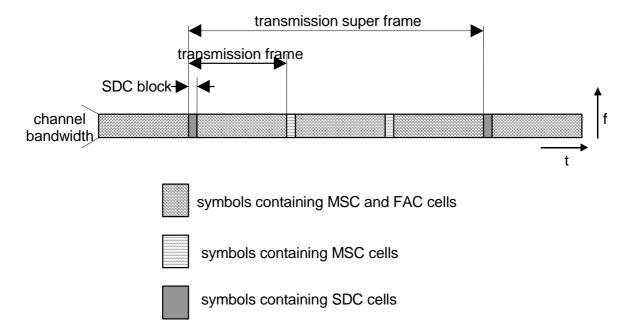


Figure 30: Time-frequency location of FAC and SDC signals

8.5.2 FAC cells

8.5.2.1 Cell positions

The cells used for FAC are cells that are neither frequency references, nor time references, nor gain references, nor data cells in the symbols that do not contain the SDC.

FAC cells convey highly protected QAM symbols that allow fast detection by the receiver of the type of signal it is currently receiving.

There are always 65 FAC cells. Tables 93 to 96 give the position of the FAC cells for each robustness mode.

Table 93: Position of the FAC cells in robustness mode A

Symbol	Carrier number		
0			
1			
2	26, 46, 66, 86		
3	10, 30, 50, 70, 90		
4	14, 22, 34, 62, 74, 94		
5	26, 38, 58, 66, 78		
6	22, 30, 42, 62, 70, 82		
7	26, 34, 46, 66, 74, 86		
8	10, 30, 38, 50, 58, 70, 78, 90		
9	14, 22, 34, 42, 62, 74, 82, 94		
10	26, 38, 46, 66, 86		
11	10, 30, 50, 70, 90		
12	14, 34, 74, 94		
13	38, 58, 78		
14			

Table 94: Position of the FAC cells in robustness mode B

Symbol	Carrier number
0	
1	
2	13, 25, 43, 55, 67
3	15, 27, 45, 57, 69
4	17, 29, 47, 59, 71
5	19, 31, 49, 61, 73
6	9, 21, 33, 51, 63, 75
7	11, 23, 35, 53, 65, 77
8	13, 25, 37, 55, 67, 79
9	15, 27, 39, 57, 69, 81
10	17, 29, 41, 59, 71, 83
11	19, 31, 43, 61, 73
12	21, 33, 45, 63, 75
13	23, 35, 47, 65, 77
14	

Table 95: Position of the FAC cells in robustness mode C

Symbol	Carrier number
0	
1	
2	
3	9, 21, 45, 57
4	23, 35, 47
5	13, 25, 37, 49
6	15, 27, 39, 51
7	5, 17, 29, 41, 53
8	7, 19, 31, 43, 55
9	9, 21, 45, 57
10	23, 35, 47
11	13, 25, 37, 49
12	15, 27, 39, 51
13	5, 17, 29, 41, 53
14	7, 19, 31, 43, 55
15	9, 21, 45, 57
16	23, 35, 47
17	13, 25, 37, 49
18	15, 27, 39, 51
19	

Table 96: Position of the FAC cells in robustness mode D

Symbol	Carrier number
0	
1	
2	
3	9, 18, 27
4	10, 19
5	11, 20, 29
6	12, 30
7	13, 22, 31
8	5, 14, 23, 32
9	6, 15, 24, 33
10	16, 25, 34
11	8, 17, 26, 35
12	9, 18, 27, 36
13	10, 19, 37
14	11, 20, 29
15	12, 30
16	13, 22, 31
17	5, 14, 23, 32
18	6, 15, 24, 33
19	16, 25, 34
20	8, 17, 26, 35
21	9, 18, 27, 36
22	10, 19, 37
23	

8.5.2.2 Cell gains and phases

The $c_{r,s,k}$ values are normalized modulation values of the constellation point z according to the modulation alphabet used for the FAC (4-QAM) (see figure 27).

Successive constellation points are assigned to the FAC cells of a transmission frame in order of increasing carrier index k, starting from the most negative k; then in time order starting from the first FAC bearing symbol of the frame.

8.5.3 SDC cells

8.5.3.1 Cell positions

The cells used for SDC are all the cells in the SDC symbols which are neither frequency references, nor time references, nor gain references for which $k_{\min} \le k \le k_{\max}$ and k does not belong to the subset of unused carriers defined above. For robustness modes A and B, the SDC symbols are symbols 0 and 1 of each transmission super frame. For robustness modes C and D, the SDC symbols are symbols 0, 1 and 2 of each transmission super frame.

8.5.3.2 Cell gains and phases

The $c_{r,s,k}$ values are normalized modulation values of the constellation point z according to the modulation alphabet used for the SDC (16- or 4-QAM, see figures 26 and 27).

Successive constellation points are assigned to the SDC cells of a transmission super frame in order of increasing carrier index k, starting from the most negative k; then in time order starting from the first SDC bearing symbol of the super frame.

8.6 Data cells

8.6.1 Cell positions

Data cells are all cells which are neither pilot cells, nor control cells; for which $k_{\min} \le k \le k_{\max}$ and k does not belong to the subset of unused carriers defined above.

8.6.2 Cell gains and phases

The $c_{r,s,k}$ values are the normalized modulation values of the constellation point z according to the modulation alphabet used for the MSC (64- or 16-QAM, see figures 23 to 26) taken from the vector S_m (see clause 7.7).

Successive elements $s_{m,i}$ are assigned to the cells of a transmission super frame in order of increasing carrier index k, starting from the most negative k; then in time order starting from the first non-SDC symbol of the super frame.

Annex A (informative): Simulated system performance

The table gives simulated system performance anticipating perfect channel estimation and the absence of phase noise and quantization effects. Channel decoding is assumed to be done with a multistage decoder with two iterations.

The results are given for five of the channels of annex B, whereby the associated OFDM modes are the Mode A for the channels 1 and 2, the Mode B mode for the channels 3 to 5. The associated code rate is R = 0.6 and the modulation is 64-QAM. The signal power includes pilots and the guard interval.

Table A.1: Required C/N for a transmission to achieve a BER = 1×10^{-4} after the channel decoder for the MSC

Channel model	Code rate R = 0,6
Channel 1	14,9 dB
Channel 2	16,5 dB
Channel 3	23,2 dB
Channel 4	22,3 dB
Channel 5	20,4 dB

Annex B (informative): Definition of channel profiles

The channels to be considered are the LF, MF and HF broadcast radio transmission channels. In principle all three are multipath channels because the surface of the earth and the ionosphere are involved in the mechanism of electromagnetic wave propagation.

The approach is to use stochastic time-varying models with a stationary statistics and define models for good, moderate and bad conditions by taking appropriate parameter values of the general model. One of those models with adaptable parameters is the Wide Sense Stationary Uncorrelated Scattering model (WSSUS model). The justification for the stationary approach with different parameter sets is, that results on real channels lead to BER curves between best and worst cases found in the simulation.

The channel models have been generated from the following equations where e(t) and s(t) are the complex envelops of the input and output signals respectively:

$$s(t) = \sum_{k=1}^{n} \rho_k c_k(t) e(t - \Delta_k)$$
(1)

This is a tapped delay-line where:

- ρ_k is the attenuation of the path number k listed in table B.1
- Δ_k is the relative delay of the path number k listed in table B.1
- the time-variant tap weights $\{c_k(t)\}$ are zero mean complex-valued stationary gaussian random processes. The magnitudes $|c_k(t)|$ are Rayleigh-distributed and the phases Φ (t) are uniformly distributed.

For each weight $\{c_k(t)\}$ there is one stochastic process, characterized by its variance and its power density spectrum (PDS). The variance is a measure for the average signal power which is received via this path and is defined by the relative attenuation ρ_k - listed in table B.1 - and the PDS determines the average speed of variation in time. The width of the PDS is quantified by a number and is referred to as the Doppler spread D_{sp} of that path - listed in table B.1.

There might be also a non-zero centre frequency of the PDS, which can be interpreted as an average frequency shift or Doppler shift D_{sh} - listed in table B.1.

The PDS is modelled by filtering of white noise (i.e. with constant PDS) and is equal to:

$$\phi_{n,n_i}(f) = N_0 \cdot \left| H(f) \right|^2 \tag{2}$$

H(f) is the transfer function of the filter. The stochastic processes belonging to every individual path then become Rayleigh processes. For the ionospheric path, a Gaussian shape has proven to be a good approach with respect to real observations.

The Doppler profile on each path k is then defined as:

$$|H(f)|^2 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma_d^2}} e^{-\frac{(f-Dsh)^2}{2\sigma_d^2}}$$
 (3)

The Doppler spread is specified as 2-sided and contains 68 % of the power:

$$D_{sp} = 2 \sigma_d \tag{4}$$

Table B.1: Set of channels

Channel no 1: AWGN		good typical/moderate bad		LF, MF,HF LF, var.SNR
	path 1	path 2	path 3	path 4
Delay (∆ _k)	0			
Path gain, rms (ρ _k)	1			
Doppler shift (D _{sh})	0			
Doppler spread (D _{sp})	0			

Channel no 2: Rice with delay		good typical/moderate bad		MF, HF
	path 1	path 2	path 3	path 4
Delay (∆ _k)	0	1 ms		
Path gain, rms (ρ _k)	1	0,5		
Doppler shift (D _{sh})	0	0		
Doppler spread (D _{sp})	0	0,1 Hz		

Channel no 3: US Consortium		good typical/moderate bad		HF MF
	path 1	path 2	path 3	path 4
Delay (∆ _k)	0	0,7 ms	1,5 ms	2,2 ms
Path gain, rms (ρ _k)	1	0,7	0,5	0,25
Doppler shift (D _{sh})	0,1 Hz	0,2 Hz	0,5 Hz	1,0 Hz
Doppler spread (D _{sp})	0,1 Hz	0,5 Hz	1,0 Hz	2,0 Hz

Channel no 4: CCIR Poor		good typical/moderate bad		HF
	path 1	path 2	path 3	path 4
Delay (∆ _k)	0	2 ms		
Path gain, rms (ρ _k)	1	1		
Doppler shift (D _{sh})	0	0		
Doppler spread (D _{sp})	1 Hz	1 Hz		

Channel no 5		good typical/moderate bad		HF
	path 1	path 2	path 3	path 4
Delay (∆ _k)	0	4 ms		
Path gain, rms (ρ _k)	1	1		
Doppler shift (D _{sh})	0	0		
Doppler spread (D _{sp})	2 Hz	2 Hz		

Channel no 6		good typical/moderate bad		HF
	path 1	path 2	path 3	path 4
Delay (∆ _k)	0	2 ms	4 ms	6 ms
Path gain, rms (ρ _k)	0,5	1	0,25	0,0625
Doppler shift (D _{sh})	0	1,2 Hz	2,4 Hz	3,6 Hz
Doppler spread (D _{sp})	0,1 Hz	2,4 Hz	4,8 Hz	7,2 Hz

Annex C (informative): Example of mapping of logical frames to multiplex frames

There are many service and stream combinations possible within the DRM system. One example is illustrated in this annex.

This example DRM signal contains two services: an audio service (service A) and a data service (service D). The audio service also carries a data application.

UEP is applied to the audio service. The data application carried with the audio service uses the lower protection. The data service uses the higher protection. The code rates chosen are 0,5 and 0,6 corresponding to protection level 0 and 1 respectively.

Service A consists of two streams: stream 0 carries the audio, stream 1 carries the data application.

Service D consists of one stream: stream 2.

Stream 0 is carried in logical frames L0, stream 1 is carried in logical frames L1 and stream 2 is carried in logical frames L2.

L0 has 266 bytes in the higher protected part (part A) with protection level 0, and 798 bytes in the lower protected part (part B) with protection level 1.

L1 has 59 bytes in the lower protected part (part B) with protection level 1.

L2 has 19 bytes in the higher protected part (part A) with protection level 0.

The resulting multiplex frame is illustrated in the figure below:

Protection level 0		Protection level 1		
Stream 0	Stream 2	Stream 0	Stream 1	
266 bytes	19 Bytes	798 Bytes	59 Bytes	

Figure C.1

The multiplex description data entity is coded as follows:

Field name	Field size	Field value
length	7	9
version number	1	0
type	4	0
protection level for part A	2	0
protection level for part B	2	1
data length of part A (stream 0)	12	266
data length of part B (stream 0)	12	798
data length of part A (stream 1)	12	0
data length of part B (stream 1)	12	59
data length of part A (stream 2)	12	19
data length of part B (stream 2)	12	0

Annex D (normative): Calculation of the CRC word

The implementation of Cyclic Redundancy Check codes (CRC-codes) allows the detection of transmission errors at the receiver side. For this purpose CRC words shall be included in the transmitted data. These CRC words shall be defined by the result of the procedure described in this annex.

A CRC code is defined by a polynomial of degree *n*:

$$G_n(x) = x^n + g_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \dots + g_2x^2 + g_1x + 1$$

with $n \ge 1$:

and: $g_i \in \{0,1\}, i = 1,...,n-1$

The CRC calculation may be performed by means of a shift register containing n register stages, equivalent to the degree of the polynomial (see figure D.1). The stages are denoted by $b_0 \dots b_{n-1}$, where b_0 corresponds to 1, b_1 to x, b_2 to x^2 , ..., b_{n-1} to x^{n-1} . The shift register is tapped by inserting XORs at the input of those stages, where the corresponding coefficients g_i of the polynomial are "1".

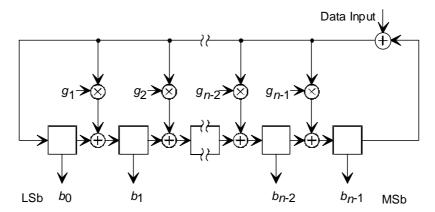


Figure D.1: General CRC block diagram

At the beginning of the CRC calculation, all register stage contents are initialized to all ones. After applying the first bit of the data block (MSb first) to the input, the shift clock causes the register to shift its content by one stage towards the MSb stage (b_{n-1}), while loading the tapped stages with the result of the appropriate XOR operations. The procedure is then repeated for each data bit. Following the shift after applying the last bit (LSb) of the data block to the input, the shift register contains the CRC word which is then read out. Data and CRC word are transmitted with MSb first. The CRC shall be inverted (1's complement) prior to transmission.

The CRC codes used in the DRM system shall be based on the following polynomials:

-
$$G_{16}(x) = x^{16} + x^{12} + x^5 + 1$$

-
$$G_8(x) = x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + 1$$

-
$$G_6(x) = x^6 + x^5 + x^3 + x^2 + x + 1$$

-
$$G_5(x) = x^5 + x^4 + x^2 + x + 1$$

$$- G_3(x) = x^3 + x + 1$$

-
$$G_2(x) = x^2 + x + 1$$

$$- G_1(x) = x + 1$$

The assignment of the polynomials to the respective applications is given in each clause.

Annex E (informative): Indicative RF Protection ratios

Protection ratios are required for:

- AM interfered with by DRM digital signals;
- DRM digital signals interfered with by AM;
- DRM digital signals interfered with by DRM digital signals.

Indicative RF protection ratios for different channel spacings are given in the following tables. However, these values depend very much on the development of system components, e.g. on receiver and transmitter characteristics. Therefore, the given values have to be considered as preliminary until measurement results and calculations are available, which are based on the performance of a broader quantity of equipment.

Table E.1: AM interfered with by DRM digital signals

∆f/kHz	Relative RF Protection Ratios a $_{rf}$ /dB ($a_{af} = 0$ dB)							
0	6,6	6,1	6,3	5,8				
5	3,2	2,7	3,2	2,8				
9	-32,6	-27,7	-27,5	-23,2				
10	-41,1	-36,4	-33,6	-31,2				
15	-54,2	-53,6	-43,5	-42,3				
18	-56,9	-56,8	-46,9	-45,6				
20	-56,8	-56,5	-48,8	-47,6				
Wanted		Α	M					
Interferer	DRM Syr	nthesizer	DRM Spec	trum Mask				
Mode	Mode A 9 kHz	Mode B 10 kHz	Mode A 9 kHz	Mode B 10 kHz				
wiode	64-QAM	64-QAM	64-QAM	64-QAM				

These values are valid for AM signals with high compression and a modern AM receiver with an RF bandwidth of 4,4 kHz and a slope of 35 dB/octave (attenuation at a frequency separation of 5 kHz: 41,5 dB).

The values shown in the table above are derived from the measured spectrum distributions of the synthesizer signals and the AM spectrum masks from ITU-R Recommendation SM.328-10 [12], which were adapted to the bandwidths and modulation of the DRM signals.

Table E.2: DRM digital signals interfered with by AM

Δf/kHz		RF Protection Ratios a _{rf} /dB							
0	0,6	7,1	1,2	7,5	-1,7	4,6			
0,050	0,6	7,2							
0,300	3,4	29,5	1,0	8,5					
5	-7,4	-1,1	-3,9	1,8					
9	(-45,8)	(29,9)							
10	-59,6	-34,1	-53,4	-30,9					
15	< -60	-39,7	< -60	-37,5					
18	< -60		< -60						
20	< -60	-42,3	< -60	-39,8					
Wanted			DI	RM					
	Mode A	Mode A	Mode B	Mode B	Mode B	Mode B			
Mode	9 kHz	9 kHz	10 kHz	10 kHz	10 kHz	10 kHz			
	64-QAM	64-QAM	64-QAM	64-QAM	16-QAM	16-QAM			
Interferer			A	M					
Mode	m = 25 % (compr. normal)	m = 53 % (compr. high)	m = 25 % (compr. normal)	m = 53 % (compr. high)	m = 25 % (compr. normal)	m = 53 % (compr. high)			

These values are valid for a wanted signal having a BER of 10⁻⁴ and an unwanted AM signal modulated with coloured noise according to ITU-R Recommendation BS.559-2 [11].

Table E.3: DRM digital signals interfered with by DRM digital signals

∆f/kHz	RF Protection Ratios a _{rf} /dB							
0	17,3	17,4	13,3	(17,3)	(17,4)	(13,3)		
5	12,4	12,3		(13,0)	(12,7)			
9	-32,1			(0,8)				
10		-35,1			(-2,3)			
15		-39,1			(-27,6)			
18	-46,3			(-36,9)				
20		-44,4			(-34,9)			
Wanted		DRM		DRM				
	Mode A	Mode B	Mode B	Mode A	Mode B	Mode B		
Mode	9 kHz	10 kHz	10 kHz	9 kHz	10 kHz	10 kHz		
	64-QAM	64-QAM	16-QAM	64-QAM	64-QAM	16-QAM		
Interferer	D	RM Synthesize	er	DR	M Spectrum Ma	ask		
	Mode A	Mode B	Mode B	Mode A	Mode B	Mode B		
Mode	9 kHz	10 kHz	10 kHz	9 kHz	10 kHz	10 kHz		
	64-QAM	64-QAM	16-QAM	64-QAM	64-QAM	16-QAM		

These values are valid for a wanted signal having a BER of 10⁻⁴.

The values in brackets shown in the table above are derived from a comparison of the measured spectrum distributions of the synthesizer signals and the AM spectrum masks from ITU-R Recommendation SM.328-10 [12], which were adapted to the bandwidths and modulation of the DRM signals.

Annex F (informative): Guidelines for emitter implementation

Void.

Annex G (informative): Guidelines for receiver implementation

G.1 Alternative frequency checking and switching (AFS)

Alternative frequency switching (AFS) provides the functionality of seamlessly checking for the availability of the same programme material on a differing frequency and then switching to it if it is valid. Alternative frequencies can be signalled by use of SDC data entity type 3. The various steps of this process are indicated in figure G.1.

AFS specific mathematical symbols are defined as follows:

T_d: time delay at point of reception between the current and the possible alternative frequency.

T_{tune}: time needed by the receiver to tune to the alternative frequency.

T_{check}: time available to acquire the data required for the validation of the AF.

Procedure:

At the start of known SDC block on the tuned frequency, the receiver re-tunes to the alternative frequency. It acquires the data necessary to perform the AF-check and immediately tunes back to the original tuned frequency. This process has to be completed within the time interval T_{check} . Subsequently the validity of the alternative frequency can be computed before the next occurrence of the SDC. Subject to the validation of the alternative frequency, the receiver may choose to switch to the new frequency at this point without an interruption of service.

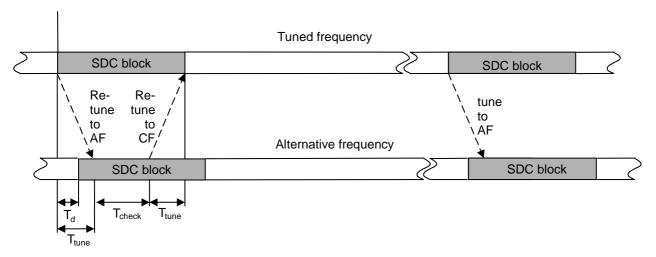


Figure G.1: Illustration of AFS function

The points at which the receiver may check the alternative frequencies is governed by the Identity field in the FAC in combination with the AFS index signalled in the SDC.

If the receiver detects a failure of the FAC CRC for the first transmission frame of the transmission super frame then it cannot perform an AFS check because the value of the Identity field is unknown.

For fully dynamic operation (see clause 6.4.5), no AFS is possible because the receiver has no knowledge of the data that will be sent.

For fully static operation, the AFS function may be performed every super transmission frame, provided that the receiver has stored all the different SDC blocks in the cycle. The number of SDC blocks in the cycle is given by the AFS index + 1.

For semi-dynamic operation, the AFS function may only be performed at certain transmission super frames. The following examples illustrate some of the many possibilities.

EXAMPLE 1:

Changing the content of the SDC block (A to B) with AFS index = 0:

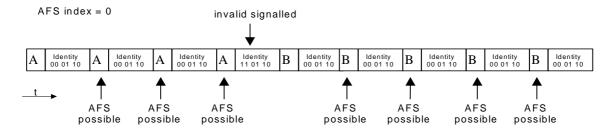


Figure G.2: Example 1

NOTE 1:

- very fast AFS possibility after tuning;
- very limited SDC data size when AFS feature should be used.

EXAMPLE 2:

Changing the content of both SDC blocks (A to C; B to D) with AFS index = 1:

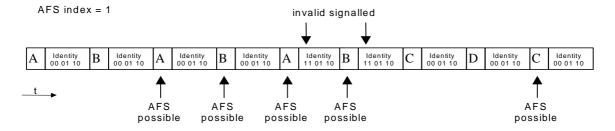


Figure G.3: Example 2

NOTE 2:

- while changing the SDC blocks in two consecutive SDC blocks is no AFS possible;
- with AFS = n the first AFS can occur after (n + 1) received SDC blocks.

EXAMPLE 3:

Changing the content of one SDC block (A to C) with AFS index = 1

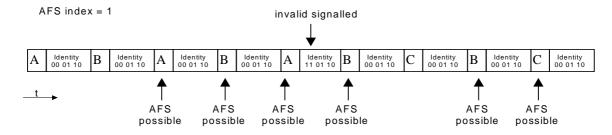


Figure G.4: Example 3

NOTE 3:

- only one AFS possibility is missed.

EXAMPLE 4:

Continuous changing of one SDC block (B to C to D...) with AFS index = 1

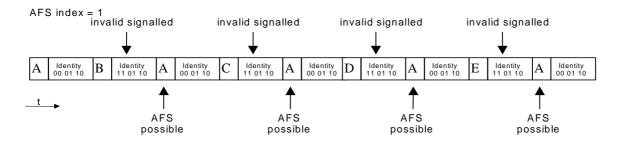


Figure G.5: Example 4

NOTE 4:

- only every second frame AFS is possible;
- SDC data size is increased.

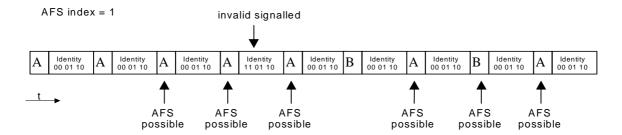


Figure G.6: Example 5

EXAMPLE 5:

Change of repetition rate of SDC block (without reconfiguration) with AFS index = 1

NOTE 5:

- first AFS possible after n frames after tuning;
- flexible SDC data size.

For other values of AFS index, similar schemes can be applied.

G.2 Character sets

DRM uses UTF-8 character coding, and so allows all known characters to be broadcast. However, receivers may be produced that do not support all characters. In this case the following behaviour is recommended:

- For the label (sent using SDC data entity type 1): if the receiver character set does not support the characters being broadcast (for example, the label is composed of Hindi characters, but the receiver only supports European characters) then the receiver should display the Service Identifier instead.
- For the text message (carried in the MSC): if the receiver character set does not support all of the characters being broadcast then the receiver should attempt to determine if any portion of the message can be displayed. This would be, for example, if at least 10 consecutive characters could be displayed.

Annex H (informative): Service capacity and bit rates

The following table gives the orders of magnitude of the available total bit rates, which depend upon the signal bandwidth, the protection mode, the error correction codes rates.

For a 64-QAM modulation, a coding rate of 0,6, for the MSC (EEP SM):

Robustness	Spectrum occupancy							
mode	0	1	2	3	4	5		
Α	11,3 kbit/s	12,8 kbit/s	23,6 kbit/s	26,6 kbit/s	49,1 kbit/s	55,0 kbit/s		
В	8,7 kbit/s	10,0 kbit/s	18,4 kbit/s	21,0 kbit/s	38,2 kbit/s	43,0 kbit/s		
С	-	-	-	16,6 kbit/s	-	34,8 kbit/s		
D	-	-	-	11,0 kbit/s	-	23,4 kbit/s		

For a 16-QAM modulation, a coding rate of 0,62, for the MSC (EEP SM):

Robustness	Spectrum occupancy								
mode	0	1	2	3	4	5			
Α	7,8 kbit/s	8,9 kbit/s	16,4 kbit/s	18,5 kbit/s	34,1 kbit/s	38,2 kbit/s			
В	6,0 kbit/s	6,9 kbit/s	12,8 kbit/s	14,6 kbit/s	26,5 kbit/s	29,8 kbit/s			
С	-	-	-	11,5 kbit/s	-	24,1 kbit/s			
D	-	-	-	7,6 kbit/s	-	16,3 kbit/s			

Minimum absolute (R = 0,50, 16-QAM, mode B, 4,5 kHz) 4,8 kbit/s

Maximum absolute (R = 0,78, 64-QAM, mode A, 20 kHz) 72,0 kbit/s

Annex I (normative): Audio tables

Table I.1: Coefficients c[i] of the QMF bank window

			T = -
c[0] = -0.00055252865047	c[1] = -0,00056176925738	c[2] = -0.00049475180896	c[3] = -0.00048752279712
c[4] = -0.00048937912498	c[5] = -0.00050407143497	c[6] = -0.00052265642972	c[7] = -0.00054665656337
c[8] = -0,00056778025613	c[9] = -0,00058709304852	c[10] = -0,00061327473938	c[11] = -0,00063124935319
c[12] = -0,00065403333621	c[13] = -0,00067776907764	c[14] = -0,00069416146273	c[15] = -0,00071577364744
c[16] = -0,00072550431222	c[17] = -0,00074409418541		
	<u> </u>	c[18] = -0,00074905980532	c[19] = -0,00076813719270
c[20] = -0,00077248485949	c[21] = -0,00078343322877	c[22] = -0,00077798694927	c[23] = -0,00078036647100
c[24] = -0,00078014496257	c[25] = -0,00077579773310	c[26] = -0,00076307935757	c[27] = -0,00075300014201
c[28] = -0,00073193571525	c[29] = -0.00072153919876	c[30] = -0,00069179375372	c[31] = -0,00066504150893
c[32] = -0,00063415949025	c[33] = -0,00059461189330	c[34] = -0,00055645763906	c[35] = -0,00051455722108
c[36] = -0,00046063254803	c[37] = -0.00040951214522	c[38] = -0,00035011758756	c[39] = -0,00028969811748
c[40] = -0,00020983373440	c[41] = -0,00014463809349	c[42] = -0,00006173344072	c[43] = 0,00001349497418
c[44] = 0.00010943831274		c[46] = 0.00029495311041	
- L	c[45] = 0,00020430170688		c[47] = 0,00040265402160
c[48] = 0,00051073884952	c[49] = 0,00062393761391	c[50] = 0,00074580258865	c[51] = 0,00086084433262
c[52] = 0,00098859883015	c[53] = 0,00112501551307	c[54] = 0.00125778846475	c[55] = 0,00139024948272
c[56] = 0,00154432198471	c[57] = 0,00168680832531	c[58] = 0,00183482654224	c[59] = 0,00198411407369
c[60] = 0.00214615835557	c[61] = 0.00230172547746	c[62] = 0,00246256169126	c[63] = 0,00262017586902
c[64] = 0,00278704643465	c[65] = 0.00294694477165	c[66] = 0.00311254206525	c[67] = 0,00327396134847
c[68] = 0,00344188741828	c[69] = 0,00360082681231	c[70] = 0,00376039229104	c[71] = 0,00392074323703
c[72] = 0,00408197531935	c[73] = 0,00300002001231	c[74] = 0,00370033223104 c[74] = 0,00437307196781	c[75] = 0.00452098527825
			-1 -7
c[76] = 0,00466064606118	c[77] = 0,00479325608498	c[78] = 0,00491376035745	c[79] = 0,00503930226013
c[80] = 0,00514073539032	c[81] = 0,00524611661324	c[82] = 0,00534716811982	c[83] = 0,00541967759307
c[84] = 0.00548760401507	c[85] = 0,00554757145088	c[86] = 0,00559380230045	c[87] = 0,00562206432097
c[88] = 0,00564551969164	c[89] = 0.00563891995151	c[90] = 0,00562661141932	c[91] = 0,00559171286630
c[92] = 0,00554043639400	c[93] = 0,00547537830770	c[94] = 0,00538389758970	c[95] = 0,00527157587272
c[96] = 0,00513822754514	c[97] = 0,00498396877629	c[98] = 0,00481094690600	c[99] = 0,00460395301471
c[100] = 0,00438018617447	c[101] = 0,00412516423270	c[102] = 0,00384564081246	c[103] = 0,00354012465507
c[104] = 0,00320918858098	c[105] = 0,00284467578623	c[106] = 0,00245085400321	c[107] = 0,00202741761850
c[108] = 0,00157846825768	c[109] = 0,00109023290512	c[110] = 0,00058322642480	c[111] = 0,00002760451905
c[112] = -0,00054642808664	c[113] = -0,00115681355227	c[114] = -0,00180394725893	c[115] = -0.00248267236449
c[116] = -0.00319337783900	c[117] = -0.00394011240522	c[118] = -0.00472225962400	c[119] = -0,00553372111088
c[120] = -0,00637922932685	c[121] = -0.00726158168517	c[122] = -0,00817982333726	c[123] = -0.00913253296085
		c[126] = -0,01218499959508	
c[128] = 0,01439046660792	c[129] = 0,01554055533423		c[131] = 0,01794333813443
c[132] = 0,01918724313698	c[133] = 0,02045317933555		c[135] = 0,02306801692862
c[136] = 0,02441609920285	c[137] = 0.02578758475467	c[138] = 0.02718594296329	c[139] = 0,02860721736385
c[140] = 0.03005026574279	c[141] = 0.03150176087389	c[142] = 0.03297540810337	c[143] = 0.03446209487686
c[144] = 0.03596975605542	c[145] = 0.03748128504252	c[146] = 0.03900536794745	c[147] = 0,04053491705584
c[148] = 0.04206490946367	c[149] = 0.04360975421304	c[150] = 0.04514884056413	c[151] = 0.04668430272642
c[152] = 0,04821657200672	c[153] = 0,04973857556014	c[154] = 0.05125561555216	c[155] = 0,05276307465207
c[156] = 0,05424527683589	c[157] = 0,05571736482138		c[159] = 0,05859156836260
c[160] = 0.05998374801761		·	c[163] = 0,06397158980681
	L 1 '		
c[164] = 0,06522471064380			c[167] = 0,06870438283512
c[168] = 0,06976302447127	c[169] = 0,07076287107266		c[171] = 0,07256825833083
c[172] = 0.07336202550803	c[173] = 0.07410036424342	c[174] = 0.07474525581194	c[175] = 0,07531373362019
c[176] = 0.07580083586584	c[177] = 0.07619924793396	c[178] = 0.07649921704119	c[179] = 0.07670934904245
c[180] = 0,07681739756964	10 111 = 0,01013327133330		
	c[181] = 0,07682300113923	c[182] = 0,07672049241746	c[183] = 0,07650507183194
c[184] = 0,07617483218536	c[181] = 0,07682300113923 c[185] = 0,07573057565061	c[182] = 0,07672049241746 c[186] = 0,07515762552870	c[183] = 0.07650507183194 c[187] = 0.07446643947564
c[184] = 0,07617483218536 c[188] = 0,07364060057620	c[181] = 0,07682300113923 c[185] = 0,07573057565061 c[189] = 0,07267746427299	c[182] = 0,07672049241746 c[186] = 0,07515762552870 c[190] = 0,07158263647903	c[183] = 0,07650507183194 c[187] = 0,07446643947564 c[191] = 0,07035330735093
c[184] = 0,07617483218536 c[188] = 0,07364060057620 c[192] = 0,06896640131951	c[181] = 0,07682300113923 c[185] = 0,07573057565061 c[189] = 0,07267746427299 c[193] = 0,06745250215166	c[182] = 0,07672049241746 c[186] = 0,07515762552870 c[190] = 0,07158263647903 c[194] = 0,06576906686508	c[183] = 0,07650507183194 c[187] = 0,07446643947564 c[191] = 0,07035330735093 c[195] = 0,06394448059633
c[184] = 0,07617483218536 c[188] = 0,07364060057620 c[192] = 0,06896640131951 c[196] = 0,06196027790387	c[181] = 0,07682300113923 c[185] = 0,07573057565061 c[189] = 0,07267746427299 c[193] = 0,06745250215166 c[197] = 0,05981665708090	c[182] = 0,07672049241746 c[186] = 0,07515762552870 c[190] = 0,07158263647903 c[194] = 0,06576906686508 c[198] = 0,05751526919867	c[183] = 0,07650507183194 c[187] = 0,07446643947564 c[191] = 0,07035330735093 c[195] = 0,06394448059633 c[199] = 0,05504600343009
c[184] = 0,07617483218536 c[188] = 0,07364060057620 c[192] = 0,06896640131951	c[181] = 0,07682300113923 c[185] = 0,07573057565061 c[189] = 0,07267746427299 c[193] = 0,06745250215166	c[182] = 0,07672049241746 c[186] = 0,07515762552870 c[190] = 0,07158263647903 c[194] = 0,06576906686508 c[198] = 0,05751526919867	c[183] = 0,07650507183194 c[187] = 0,07446643947564 c[191] = 0,07035330735093 c[195] = 0,06394448059633
c[184] = 0,07617483218536 c[188] = 0,07364060057620 c[192] = 0,06896640131951 c[196] = 0,06196027790387	c[181] = 0,07682300113923 c[185] = 0,07573057565061 c[189] = 0,07267746427299 c[193] = 0,06745250215166 c[197] = 0,05981665708090 c[201] = 0,04959786763445	c[182] = 0,07672049241746 c[186] = 0,07515762552870 c[190] = 0,07158263647903 c[194] = 0,06576906686508 c[198] = 0,05751526919867 c[202] = 0,04663033051701	c[183] = 0,07650507183194 c[187] = 0,07446643947564 c[191] = 0,07035330735093 c[195] = 0,06394448059633 c[199] = 0,05504600343009
c[184] = 0,07617483218536 c[188] = 0,07364060057620 c[192] = 0,06896640131951 c[196] = 0,06196027790387 c[200] = 0,05240938217366 c[204] = 0,04014582784127	c[181] = 0,07682300113923 c[185] = 0,07573057565061 c[189] = 0,07267746427299 c[193] = 0,06745250215166 c[197] = 0,05981665708090 c[201] = 0,04959786763445 c[205] = 0,03664181168133	c[182] = 0,07672049241746 c[186] = 0,07515762552870 c[190] = 0,07158263647903 c[194] = 0,06576906686508 c[198] = 0,05751526919867 c[202] = 0,04663033051701 c[206] = 0,03295839306691	c[183] = 0,07650507183194 c[187] = 0,07446643947564 c[191] = 0,07035330735093 c[195] = 0,06394448059633 c[199] = 0,05504600343009 c[203] = 0,04347687821958 c[207] = 0,02908240060125
c[184] = 0,07617483218536 c[188] = 0,07364060057620 c[192] = 0,06896640131951 c[196] = 0,06196027790387 c[200] = 0,05240938217366 c[204] = 0,04014582784127 c[208] = 0,02503075618909	c[181] = 0,07682300113923 c[185] = 0,07573057565061 c[189] = 0,07267746427299 c[193] = 0,06745250215166 c[197] = 0,05981665708090 c[201] = 0,04959786763445 c[205] = 0,03664181168133 c[209] = 0,02079970728622	c[182] = 0,07672049241746 c[186] = 0,07515762552870 c[190] = 0,07158263647903 c[194] = 0,06576906686508 c[198] = 0,05751526919867 c[202] = 0,04663033051701 c[206] = 0,03295839306691 c[210] = 0,01637012582228	c[183] = 0,07650507183194 c[187] = 0,07446643947564 c[191] = 0,07035330735093 c[195] = 0,06394448059633 c[199] = 0,05504600343009 c[203] = 0,04347687821958 c[207] = 0,02908240060125 c[211] = 0,01176238327857
c[184] = 0,07617483218536 c[188] = 0,07364060057620 c[192] = 0,06896640131951 c[196] = 0,06196027790387 c[200] = 0,05240938217366 c[204] = 0,04014582784127 c[208] = 0,02503075618909 c[212] = 0,00696368621617	c[181] = 0,07682300113923 c[185] = 0,07573057565061 c[189] = 0,07267746427299 c[193] = 0,06745250215166 c[197] = 0,05981665708090 c[201] = 0,04959786763445 c[205] = 0,03664181168133 c[209] = 0,02079970728622 c[213] = 0,00197656014503	c[182] = 0,07672049241746 c[186] = 0,07515762552870 c[190] = 0,07158263647903 c[194] = 0,06576906686508 c[198] = 0,05751526919867 c[202] = 0,04663033051701 c[206] = 0,03295839306691 c[210] = 0,01637012582228 c[214] = -0,00320868968304	c[183] = 0,07650507183194 c[187] = 0,07446643947564 c[191] = 0,07035330735093 c[195] = 0,06394448059633 c[199] = 0,05504600343009 c[203] = 0,04347687821958 c[207] = 0,02908240060125 c[211] = 0,01176238327857 c[215] = -0,00857117491366
c[184] = 0,07617483218536 c[188] = 0,07364060057620 c[192] = 0,06896640131951 c[196] = 0,06196027790387 c[200] = 0,05240938217366 c[204] = 0,04014582784127 c[208] = 0,02503075618909 c[212] = 0,00696368621617 c[216] = -0,01412888273558	c[181] = 0,07682300113923 c[185] = 0,07573057565061 c[189] = 0,07267746427299 c[193] = 0,06745250215166 c[197] = 0,05981665708090 c[201] = 0,04959786763445 c[205] = 0,03664181168133 c[209] = 0,02079970728622 c[213] = 0,00197656014503 c[217] = -0,01988341292573	c[182] = 0,07672049241746 c[186] = 0,07515762552870 c[190] = 0,07158263647903 c[194] = 0,06576906686508 c[198] = 0,05751526919867 c[202] = 0,04663033051701 c[206] = 0,03295839306691 c[210] = 0,01637012582228 c[214] = -0,00320868968304 c[218] = -0,02582272888064	c[183] = 0,07650507183194 c[187] = 0,07446643947564 c[191] = 0,07035330735093 c[195] = 0,06394448059633 c[199] = 0,05504600343009 c[203] = 0,04347687821958 c[207] = 0,02908240060125 c[211] = 0,01176238327857 c[215] = -0,00857117491366 c[219] = -0,03195312745332
c[184] = 0,07617483218536 c[188] = 0,07364060057620 c[192] = 0,06896640131951 c[196] = 0,06196027790387 c[200] = 0,05240938217366 c[204] = 0,04014582784127 c[208] = 0,02503075618909 c[212] = 0,00696368621617 c[216] = -0,01412888273558 c[220] = -0,03827765720822	c[181] = 0,07682300113923 c[185] = 0,07573057565061 c[189] = 0,07267746427299 c[193] = 0,06745250215166 c[197] = 0,05981665708090 c[201] = 0,04959786763445 c[205] = 0,03664181168133 c[209] = 0,02079970728622 c[213] = 0,00197656014503 c[217] = -0,01988341292573 c[221] = -0,04478068215856	c[182] = 0,07672049241746 c[186] = 0,07515762552870 c[190] = 0,07158263647903 c[194] = 0,06576906686508 c[198] = 0,05751526919867 c[202] = 0,04663033051701 c[206] = 0,03295839306691 c[210] = 0,01637012582228 c[214] = -0,00320868968304	c[183] = 0,07650507183194 c[187] = 0,07446643947564 c[191] = 0,07035330735093 c[195] = 0,06394448059633 c[199] = 0,05504600343009 c[203] = 0,04347687821958 c[207] = 0,02908240060125 c[211] = 0,01176238327857 c[215] = -0,00857117491366 c[219] = -0,03195312745332 c[223] = -0,05837053268336

-[220] 0.0055522520044	-1000	L 0.400E000E044400	L_F	220	0.44400000047700	-[00	41 0 42000770046000
c[228] = -0,09555333528914							
c[232] = -0,12850028503878							
c[236] = -0,16409588556669							
c[240] = -0.20212501768103							
c[244] = -0.24230168845974							
c[248] = -0,28432141891085			_				
c[252] = -0,32781137272105						_	
		= 0,38363500139043				_	9] = 0,40623176767625
			_		· '		3] = 0,45159965356824
		·	•			•	7] = 0,49677082545707
						_	1] = 0,54125534487322
			_				5] = 0,58454032354679
		,	•			_	9] = 0,62612426956055
			_	_		_	3] = 0,66551398801627
			_			_	7] = 0,70223887193539
		·	•			_	1] = 0,73582117582769
		·	•			_	5] = 0,76586748650939
			_			_	9] = 0,79197358416424
			_	_		_	3] = 0,81381912706217
			_	_			7] = 0,83110384571520
							1] = 0,84362382812005
							5] = 0,85119715249343
		,	•			_	9] = 0,85373856005937
			_	_		_	3] = 0,85119715249343
		,	_			•	7] = 0,84362382812005
			_	_	,	_	1] = 0,83110384571520
			-			_	5] = 0,81381912706217
		= 0,80344857518505	-			_	9] = 0,79197358416424
			-			_	3] = 0,76586748650939
		= 0,75131374561237	-	_	,		7] = 0,73582117582769
		·	•			_	1] = 0,70223887193539
	-		_		,	_	5] = 0,66551398801627
c[356] = 0,65590163024671	-	,	_		,		9] = 0,62612426956055
c[360] = 0,61591099320291			_	_		_	3] = 0,58454032354679
			_	_		_	7] = 0,54125534487322
						•	1] = 0,49677082545707
						_	5] = 0,45159965356824
			_				9] = 0,40623176767625
			_	_	,	_	3] = 0,36115899031355
c[384] = -0,34999141229310			_	_		_	
c[388] = -0,30590985751916		,	_	_	,	_	3 '
c[392] = -0,26310532994603							
c[396] = -0,22196526964149							
c[400] = -0.18281725485142							
c[404] = -0.14597664911870			_			_	
c[408] = -0,11168269317730							
c[412] = -0.08013729344279							
c[416] = -0.05148041767934			_	_		_	
c[420] = -0.02582272888064			_	_		_	
c[424] = -0,00320868968304			_			_	7] = 0,01176238327857
c[428] = 0.01637012582228	c[429]	= 0,02079970728622	C[·	430	= 0,02503075618909	c[43	1] = 0,02908240060125
c[432] = 0.03295839306691	c[433]	= 0,03664181168133	c[·	434	= 0,04014582784127	c[43	5] = 0,04347687821958
c[436] = 0.04663033051701	c[437]	= 0,04959786763445	c[·	438			9] = 0,05504600343009
c[440] = 0.05751526919867	c[441]	= 0,05981665708090	C[442	= 0,06196027790387	c[44	3] = 0,06394448059633
c[444] = 0,06576906686508		= 0,06745250215166	_		,		7] = 0,07035330735093
c[448] = 0.07158263647903	c[449]	= 0,07267746427299	C[450	= 0,07364060057620	c[45	1] = 0,07446643947564
c[452] = 0,07515762552870	c[453]	= 0,07573057565061	c[454	= 0,07617483218536	c[45	5] = 0,07650507183194
c[456] = 0.07672049241746	c[457]	= 0,07682300113923	c[458	= 0,07681739756964	c[45	9] = 0,07670934904245
c[460] = 0,07649921704119	c[461]	= 0,07619924793396	c[462	= 0,07580083586584	c[46	3] = 0,07531373362019
c[464] = 0,07474525581194	c[465	= 0,07410036424342	c[4 <u>6</u> 6	= 0,07336202550803	c[46	7] = 0,07256825833083
c[468] = 0,07170026731102	c[469		_	_		_	1] = 0,06870438283512
		= 0,06643675122104	_			_	5] = 0,06397158980681
-		= 0,06134551717207	•			•	9] = 0,05859156836260
			•		,	_	3] = 0,05276307465207
		= 0,04973857556014	_	_		_	7] = 0,04668430272642
· ·			•				-

c[488] = 0.04514884056413	c[489] = 0,04360975421304	c[490] = 0,04206490946367	c[491] = 0.04053491705584
c[492] = 0.03900536794745	c[493] = 0,03748128504252	c[494] = 0,03596975605542	c[495] = 0,03446209487686
c[496] = 0.03297540810337	c[497] = 0.03150176087389	c[498] = 0.03005026574279	c[499] = 0,02860721736385
c[500] = 0,02718594296329	c[501] = 0,02578758475467	c[502] = 0,02441609920285	c[503] = 0,02306801692862
c[504] = 0.02174675502535	c[505] = 0,02045317933555	c[506] = 0,01918724313698	c[507] = 0,01794333813443
c[508] = 0,01673247129989	c[509] = 0,01554055533423	c[510] = 0,01439046660792	c[511] = 0,01327182200351
c[512] = -0.01218499959508	c[513] = -0,01113155480321	c[514] = -0.01011502154986	c[515] = -0,00913253296085
c[516] = -0,00817982333726	c[517] = -0,00726158168517	c[518] = -0,00637922932685	c[519] = -0,00553372111088
c[520] = -0.00472225962400	c[521] = -0.00394011240522	c[522] = -0,00319337783900	c[523] = -0,00248267236449
c[524] = -0.00180394725893	c[525] = -0,00115681355227	c[526] = -0,00054642808664	c[527] = 0,00002760451905
c[528] = 0,00058322642480	c[529] = 0,00109023290512	c[530] = 0,00157846825768	c[531] = 0,00202741761850
c[532] = 0,00245085400321	c[533] = 0,00284467578623	c[534] = 0,00320918858098	c[535] = 0,00354012465507
c[536] = 0.00384564081246	c[537] = 0,00412516423270	c[538] = 0,00438018617447	c[539] = 0,00460395301471
c[540] = 0.00481094690600	c[541] = 0,00498396877629	c[542] = 0,00513822754514	c[543] = 0,00527157587272
c[544] = 0.00538389758970	c[545] = 0,00547537830770	c[546] = 0,00554043639400	c[547] = 0,00559171286630
c[548] = 0,00562661141932	c[549] = 0,00563891995151	c[550] = 0,00564551969164	c[551] = 0,00562206432097
c[552] = 0,00559380230045	c[553] = 0,00554757145088	c[554] = 0,00548760401507	c[555] = 0,00541967759307
c[556] = 0,00534716811982	c[557] = 0,00524611661324	c[558] = 0,00514073539032	c[559] = 0,00503930226013
c[560] = 0,00491376035745	c[561] = 0,00479325608498	c[562] = 0,00466064606118	c[563] = 0,00452098527825
c[564] = 0,00437307196781	c[565] = 0,00422642692270	c[566] = 0,00408197531935	c[567] = 0.00392074323703
c[568] = 0,00376039229104	c[569] = 0,00360082681231	c[570] = 0,00344188741828	c[571] = 0,00327396134847
c[572] = 0,00311254206525	c[573] = 0,00294694477165	c[574] = 0,00278704643465	c[575] = 0,00262017586902
c[576] = 0.00246256169126	c[577] = 0,00230172547746	c[578] = 0,00214615835557	c[579] = 0,00198411407369
c[580] = 0.00183482654224	c[581] = 0,00168680832531	c[582] = 0,00154432198471	c[583] = 0.00139024948272
c[584] = 0,00125778846475	c[585] = 0,00112501551307	c[586] = 0,00098859883015	c[587] = 0,00086084433262
c[588] = 0,00074580258865	c[589] = 0,00062393761391	c[590] = 0,00051073884952	c[591] = 0,00040265402160
c[592] = 0,00029495311041	c[593] = 0,00020430170688	c[594] = 0,00010943831274	c[595] = 0,00001349497418
c[596] = -0,00006173344072	c[597] = -0,00014463809349	c[598] = -0,00020983373440	c[599] = -0,00028969811748
c[600] = -0,00035011758756	c[601] = -0,00040951214522	c[602] = -0,00046063254803	c[603] = -0,00051455722108
c[604] = -0,00055645763906		c[606] = -0,00063415949025	c[607] = -0,00066504150893
c[608] = -0,00069179375372	c[609] = -0,00072153919876	L 3 /	c[611] = -0,00075300014201
c[612] = -0,00076307935757	c[613] = -0,00077579773310		c[615] = -0,00078036647100
c[616] = -0,00077798694927	c[617] = -0,00078343322877		c[619] = -0,00076813719270
c[620] = -0,00074905980532	c[621] = -0,00074409418541	L 3 /	c[623] = -0,00071577364744
	c[625] = -0,00067776907764		c[627] = -0,00063124935319
	c[629] = -0,00058709304852		c[631] = -0,00054665656337
	c[633] = -0,00050407143497		
c[636] = -0,00049475180896	c[637] = -0,00056176925738	c[638] = -0,00055252865047	c[639] = 0

Annex J (informative): Numbers of input bits

Table J.1: Number of input bits L per multiplex frame for EEP SM Mode A

Parameters		Spectrum occupancy						
	0	1	2	3	4	5		
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,5	3 757	4 248	7 878	8 857	16 374	18 336		
64 QAM, $R_{all} = 0.6$	4 509	5 096	9 450	10 628	19 646	21 998		
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,71	5 322	6 018	11 157	12 547	23 193	25 976		
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,78	5 898	6 664	12 364	13 908	25 704	28 788		
16 QAM, R _{all} = 0,5	2 505	2 832	5 250	5 904	10 914	12 222		
16 QAM, R _{all} = 0,62	3 131	3 540	6 565	7 381	13 645	15 280		

Table J.2: Number of input bits L per multiplex frame for EEP SM Mode B

Parameters	Spectrum occupancy						
	0	1	2	3	4	5	
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,5	2 880	3 312	6 133	6 991	12 727	14 304	
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,6	3 456	3 972	7 361	8 390	15 272	17 162	
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,71	4 080	4 692	8 688	9 900	18 026	20 264	
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,78	4 520	5 196	9 630	10 980	19 980	22 456	
16 QAM, R _{all} = 0,5	1 920	2 208	4 089	4 662	8 484	9 534	
16 QAM, R _{all} = 0,62	2 400	2 760	5 111	5 826	10 606	11 920	

Table J.3: Number of input bits L per multiplex frame for EEP SM Mode C

Parameters		Spectrum occupancy							
	0	1	2	3	4	5			
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,5						11 581			
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,6				6 615	Not used	13 898			
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,71		Natural		7 808		16 406			
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,78		Not used		8 654		18 188			
16 QAM, R _{all} = 0,5						7 722			
16 QAM, R _{all} = 0,62				4 595		9 651			

Table J.4: Number of input bits L per multiplex frame for EEP SM Mode D

Parameters		Spectrum occupancy						
	0	1	2	3	4	5		
64 QAM, $R_{all} = 0.5$				3 660	- Not used	7 800		
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,6				4 391		9 359		
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,71		Not used		5 185		11 050		
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,78		Not used		5 746		12 242		
16 QAM, R _{all} = 0,5						5 199		
16 QAM, R _{all} = 0,62				3 050		6 500		

Table J.5: Number of input bits L per hierarchical frame for EEP HMsym VSPP Mode A

Parameters	Spectrum occupancy						
	0	0 1		3	4	5	
64 QAM, $R_0 = 0.5$			2 626	2 953	5 458	6 112	
64 QAM, R ₀ = 0,57	Not	Not used		3 372	6 236	6 984	
64 QAM, $R_0 = 0.6$	NOL			3 543	6 549	7 332	
64 QAM, $R_0 = 0.66$				3 936	7 276	8 148	

Table J.6: Number of input bits L per hierarchical frame for EEP HMsym VSPP Mode B

Parameters	Spectrum occupancy						
	0	0 1		3	4	5	
64 QAM, $R_0 = 0.5$		Not used		2 331	4 243	4 768	
64 QAM, $R_0 = 0.57$	Not			2 664	4 848	5 448	
64 QAM, $R_0 = 0.6$	NOL			2 796	5 091	5 721	
64 QAM, $R_0 = 0.66$				3 108	5 656	6 356	

Table J.7: Number of input bits L per hierarchical frame for EEP HMsym VSPP Mode C

Parameters		Spectrum occupancy						
	0	1	2	3	4	5		
64 QAM, $R_0 = 0.5$				1 838		3 861		
64 QAM, R ₀ = 0,57		Not used			Not used	4 412		
64 QAM, R ₀ = 0,6						4 632		
64 QAM, R ₀ = 0,66				2 450		5 148		

Table J.8: Number of input bits L per hierarchical frame for EEP HMsym VSPP Mode D

Parameters		Spectrum occupancy						
	0	1	2	3	4	5		
64 QAM, $R_0 = 0.5$				1 220		2 600		
64 QAM, R ₀ = 0,57		Not used			Not used	2 968		
64 QAM, R ₀ = 0,6						3 120		
64 QAM, R ₀ = 0,66				1 626	-	3 466		

Table J.9: Number of input bits L per multiplex frame for EEP HMsym SPP Mode A

Parameters	Spectrum occupancy						
	0	1	2	3	4	5	
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,45		Not used -		5 313	9 822	10 998	
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,55	Not			6 432	11 904	13 332	
64 QAM, $R_{all} = 0.72$	INOL			8 538	15 784	17 680	
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,78			8 164	9 184	16 972	19 012	

Table J.10: Number of input bits L per multiplex frame for EEP HMsym SPP Mode B

Parameters		Spectrum occupancy						
	0	1	2	3	4	5		
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,45		·		4 194	7 635	8 580		
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,55	Not	uaad	4 452	5 076	9 252	10 392		
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,72	NOL	Not used		6 738	12 268	13 792		
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,78			6 358	7 252	13 192	14 828		

Table J.11: Number of input bits L per multiplex frame for EEP HMsym SPP Mode C

Parameters		Spectrum occupancy						
	0	1	2	3	4	5		
64 QAM, $R_{all} = 0.45$				3 306		6 948		
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,55		Not used			Not used	8 424		
64 QAM, $R_{all} = 0.72$						11 167		
64 QAM, $R_{all} = 0.78$				5 714		12 012		

Table J.12: Number of input bits L per multiplex frame for EEP HMsym SPP Mode D

Parameters	Spectrum occupancy						
	0	1	2	3	4	5	
64 QAM, $R_{all} = 0.45$		Not used			- Not used	4 680	
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,55						5 664	
64 QAM, $R_{all} = 0.72$						7 518	
64 QAM, $R_{all} = 0.78$				3 794		8 082	

Table J.13: Number of input bits L per hierarchical frame for EEP HMmix VSPP Mode A

Parameters		Spectrum occupancy						
	0	0 1		3	4	5		
64 QAM, $R_0 = 0.5$		Not used		1 473	2 726	3 053		
64 QAM, R ₀ = 0,57	Not			1 684	3 112	3 488		
64 QAM, $R_0 = 0.6$	NOL			1 767	3 270	3 663		
64 QAM, $R_0 = 0.66$				1 964	3 634	4 070		

Table J.14: Number of input bits L per hierarchical frame for EEP HMmix VSPP Mode B

Parameters		Spectrum occupancy						
	0	1	2	3	4	5		
64 QAM, $R_0 = 0.5$		Not used		1 162	2 118	2 381		
64 QAM, R ₀ = 0,57	Not			1 328	2 420	2 720		
64 QAM, R ₀ = 0,6	INOL			1 395	2 541	2 856		
64 QAM, R ₀ = 0,66				1 550	2 824	3 174		

Table J.15: Number of input bits L per hierarchical frame for EEP HMmix VSPP Mode C

Parameters	Spectrum occupancy								
	0	1	2	3	4	5			
64 QAM, $R_0 = 0.5$					Not used	1 927			
64 QAM, $R_0 = 0.57$	Notuced			1 044		2 200			
64 QAM, R ₀ = 0,6		Not used				2 313			
64 QAM, R ₀ = 0,66				1 220		2 570			

Table J.16: Number of input bits L per hierarchical frame for EEP HMmix VSPP Mode D

Parameters	Spectrum occupancy								
	0	1	2	3	4	5			
64 QAM, $R_0 = 0.5$	Not used			607	Not used	1 297			
64 QAM, R ₀ = 0,57				692		1 480			
64 QAM, $R_0 = 0.6$				726		1 554			
64 QAM, R ₀ = 0,66				808		1 728			

Table J.17: Number of input bits L per multiplex frame for EEP HMmix SPP Mode A

Parameters		Spectrum occupancy				
	0	1	2	3	4	5
64 QAM, $R_{all} = 0.48$		Not used		7 066	13 083	14 650
64 QAM, $R_{all} = 0.58$	Not			8 506	15 751	17 649
64 QAM, $R_{all} = 0.71$	NOL			10 517	19 461	21 801
64 QAM, $R_{all} = 0.78$			10 244	11 516	21 308	23 872

Table J.18: Number of input bits L per multiplex frame for EEP HMmix SPP Mode B

Parameters	Spectrum occupancy					
	0	1	2	3	4	5
64 QAM, $R_{all} = 0.48$		Not used		5 577	10 164	11 425
64 QAM, $R_{all} = 0.58$	Not			6 717	12 244	13 753
64 QAM, $R_{all} = 0.71$	NOL			8 293	15 121	17 001
64 QAM, $R_{all} = 0.78$			7 960	9 088	16 556	18 620

Table J.19: Number of input bits L per multiplex frame for EEP HMmix SPP Mode C

Parameters		Spectrum occupancy				
	0	1	2	3	4	5
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,48				4 395		9 247
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,58		Not used			Not used	11 139
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,71						13 750
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,78				7 152		15 072

Table J.20: Number of input bits L per multiplex frame for EEP HMmix SPP Mode D

Parameters		Spectrum occupancy					
	0	1	2	3	4	5	
64 QAM, $R_{all} = 0.48$				2 908		6 220	
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,58		Notuced		3 500	Not wood	7 484	
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,71		Not used			Not used	9 257	
64 QAM, R _{all} = 0,78				4 728		10 136	

Table J.21: Number of input bits L per SDC block for Mode A

Parameters	Spectrum occupancy					
	0	1	2	3	4	5
16 QAM, R _{all} = 0,5	321	366	705	798	1 494	1 680
4 QAM, $R_{all} = 0.5$	161	184	353	399	748	840

Table J.22: Number of input bits L per SDC block for Mode B

Parameters		Spectrum occupancy				
	0	1	2	3	4	5
16 QAM, R _{all} = 0,5	246	288	552	630	1 164	1 311
4 QAM, R _{all} = 0,5	124	144	276	316	582	656

Table J.23: Number of input bits L per SDC block for Mode C

Parameters	Spectrum occupancy					
	0 1 2		3	4	5	
16 QAM, $R_{all} = 0.5$	Netwood			564	Not used	1 200
4 QAM, $R_{all} = 0.5$	Not used		282	Not useu	601	

Table J.24: Number of input bits L per SDC block for Mode D

	Spectrum occupancy					
Parameters	0	1	2	3	4	5
16 QAM, $R_{all} = 0.5$	Not used —			291	Not used	651
$4 \text{ QAM}, R_{\text{all}} = 0.5$				146		326

Annex K (informative): Simulcast transmission

The DRM signal is designed to work in the same broadcast bands as AM signals. Simulcast transmission of services using DRM and AM can be performed by the juxtaposition of the analogue AM signal (DSB or VSB or SSB) and a DRM digital signal.

The following figures illustrate some solutions for transmitting the AM and DRM signals from a single transmitter. They can equally be produced by two separate transmitters.

Figure K.1 gives some possibilities for the case where the DRM reference frequency, f_R , is one channel or two channels (i.e. ± 9 kHz, ± 10 kHz, -18 kHz or -20 kHz) from the AM carrier frequency, f_C , and figure K.2 gives some possibilities for the case where the DRM reference frequency, f_R , is nominally half a channel from the AM carrier frequency, f_C . Due to the requirement to position the DRM reference frequency on an integer multiple of 1 kHz, the DRM reference frequency and the AM carrier frequency shall be either 4 kHz or 5 kHz apart.

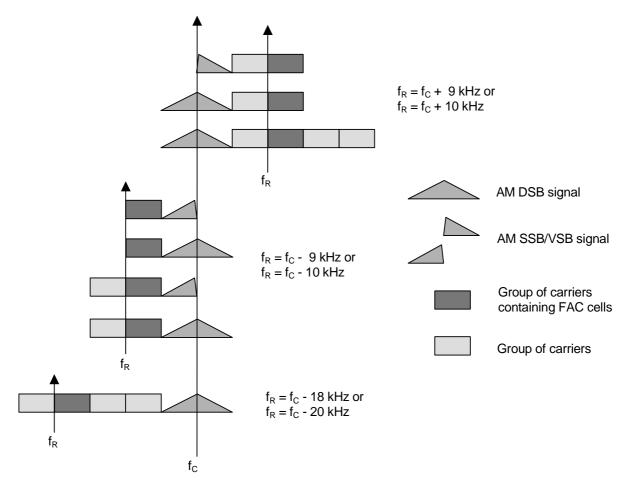


Figure K.1: Example simulcast modes for whole channel offsets

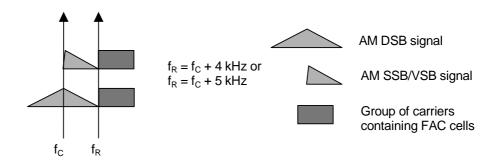


Figure K.2: Example simulcast modes for half channel offsets

Annex L (informative): Pilot reference illustrations

The figures below show the position of the gain reference cells (character 'O') for nominal channel bandwidths of up to 10 kHz (spectrum occupancy parameter = 0, 1, 2 or 3). The patterns continue to the right for the 18 kHz and 20 kHz nominal channel bandwidth options. (spectrum occupancy parameter = 4 or 5).

Mode A:

```
+-> carriers (k)
symbols (s)
  DC
 negative frequencies
   positive frequencies
12
13
```

Mode B:

```
+-> carriers (k)
symbols (s)
                                                                                                                                                                DC
                                                                 negative frequencies
                                                                                                                                                                                                         positive frequencies
             .0....0....0....0....0:...0:...0....0....0....0....0....0....0
                                   0
                                   \dots 0 \dots 0 \dots 0 \dots 0 \dots 0 \dots 0 \dots 
                                   .0....0....0....0....0:...0:...0....0....0....0....0....0....0....0
11
                                  12
                                   13
                               .0....0....0....0....0....0:...0....0....0....0....0....0....0....0...
```

Mode C:

```
+-> carriers (k)
 symbols (s)
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             DC
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           positive frequencies
                                                                                                                               negative frequencies
                           n
                           0
                                                                     . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . . 0 . . . . . 0 . . . . . . . 0 . . . . . . . . 0 . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 
       1
       2
                                                                     Ω
       3
                           0
                                                                     . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . 
        4
                                                                     0
                           0
                                                                    5
       6
                                                                     0
                           0
                                                                    8
                                                                    9
                           0
                                                                    . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . 
                                                                      10
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           0
11
                           0
                                                                     . 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 ... 0 
 12
                                                                    0
13
                                                                    . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . 
                                                                      Ω
14
15
                           0
                                                                     16
                                                                     Ω
17
                           0
                                                                    18
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           0
                           Λ
19
                                                                     . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 : . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . . . . 0 . .
```

Mode D:

```
+-> carriers (k)
symbols (s)
                                                                                                                                                                                                        DC
                                                                                negative frequencies
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           positive frequencies
:
                 . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 
    1
    2
                   4
                 . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 
                 8
                 9
10
                 11
12
                 13
                 . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 
14
                  15
                 . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 
17
                  18
19
                 . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 . . 0 
20
                  21
                 2.2
                 23
```

The figures below show the position of the gain reference cells (character 'O'), the frequency reference cells (character 'f') and FAC cells (character 'x') for the DC to 4,5 kHz (nominal).

Mode A: positions for pilot cells

```
+-> carriers (k)
symbols (s)
DC (not used)
         ::0.....f...0....f...0....f....0....f.....0.....f.....0
        ::.....x..f..x....x..f..x....x..f...x....x..f...x....x..f...x....x..f...x....x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x...x..x..x..x...x..x...x...x..x...x..x..x..x..x..x..x..x..x..x..x..x..x..x..x..x..x..x..x..x..x.
         ::.....f...x...f...x....x...0...x.....f...0...x......f.x...0...x.....x...0...x...
10
        11
        12
        13
```

Mode B: positions for pilot cells

```
+-> carriers (k)
symbols (s)
DC (not used)
 : 0.\dots.0\dots0.xf.0\dots0.xf.0\dots0.x\dots0\dots.x\dots0.x\dots0.x\dots0.f.\dots0.x\dots0.f.0.x\dots0\dots0.x\dots0\dots\dots0
10
12
13
```

Mode C: positions for pilot cells

```
+-> carriers (k)
symbols (s)
DC (not used)
 :1234567890123456789012345678901234567890123456789012345678901234567890
 : 0 \ldots 0 \ldots 0 . \\ f. 0 \ldots 0 \ldots 0 \ldots x . 0 \ldots 0 \ldots f. \\ x. 0 \ldots 0 \ldots f0 . \\ x. 0 \ldots 0 \ldots 0 \ldots 0 \ldots 0 \ldots 0
 10
 11
 15
 16
 17
 : 0 \dots 0 \dots 0 \dots f. 0. x. 0 \dots 0 \dots 0. x. 0 \dots f \dots 0. x. 0 \dots f 0 \dots 0. x. 0 \dots 0 \dots 0 \dots 0
```

Mode D: positions for pilot cells

```
+-> carriers (k)
symbols (s)
DC (not used)
      :12345678901234567890123456789012345678901234
      :0..0..f.x0..0..0.x0.f0..0.xf..0..0..0..0..0
      :.0..0.f0.x0..0..x0f.0..0.f0..0..0..0..0
      :..0..0f.0.x0..0..0.xf..0..0fx0..0..0..0..0..
:0..0..f..0.x0..0..0.f0..0..f.x0..0..0..0..0..
      :.0..0.f0..0.x0..0..0fx0..0.f0.x0..0..0..0
      :..0.x0f.0..0.x0..0..f.x0..0f.0.x0..0..0..0..
      :0..0.xf..0..0.x0..0.f0.x0..f..0.x0..0..0..0.
10
      :.0..0.f0..0..x0..0f.0.x0.f0..0.x0..0..0\\
      :..0..0fx0..0..0.x0..f..0.x0f.0..0.x0..0..0..
:0..0..f.x0..0..0.x0.f0..0.xf..0..0.x0..0..0..
11
12
      :.0..0.f0.x0..0..0.x0f.0..0.f0..0..0.x0..0..0
      :..0..0f.0.x0..0..0.xf..0..0fx0..0..0..0..0..
      \begin{array}{l} : 0 \ldots 0 \ldots f \ldots 0 \ldots x 0 \ldots 0 \ldots 0 \ldots f 0 \ldots 0 \ldots f \ldots x 0 \ldots 0 \ldots 0 \ldots 0 \\ : \ldots 0 \ldots 0 \ldots f 0 \ldots 0 \ldots x 0 \ldots 0 \ldots 0 f x 0 \ldots 0 \ldots f 0 \ldots x 0 \ldots 0 \ldots 0 \ldots 0 \end{array}
16
      \begin{array}{l} :..0.x0f.0..0.x0..0..f.x0..0f.0.x0..0..0..0..\\ :0..0.xf..0..0.x0..0.f0.x0..f..0.x0..0..0..0.. \end{array}
17
18
      :.0..0.f0..0..x0..0f.0.x0.f0..0.x0..0..0
      :..0..0fx0..0..x0..f..0.x0f.0..0.x0..0..0.\\
20
21
      :0..0..f.x0..0..0.x0.f0..0.xf..0..0.x0..0..0.
22
      :.0..0.f0.x0..0..0.x0f.0..0.f0..0..0.x0..0..0\\
```

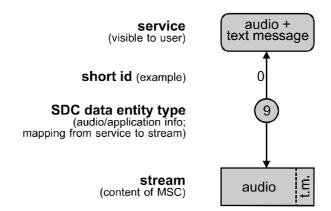
Annex M (informative): MSC configuration examples

The examples below demonstrate some possibilities for configuring the MSC. Especially the mapping from services to audio or data streams is covered together with some limitations which must be respected when assembling the DRM multiplex.

General Preface:

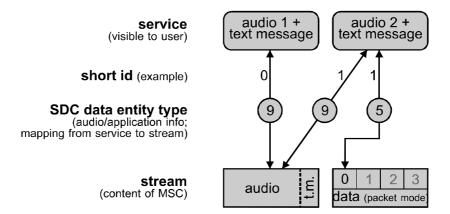
- The DRM multiplex may contain up to four streams in the MSC, each carrying audio or data information.
- An audio stream is described by SDC data entity type 9. A packet mode data stream consists of
 1 4 "sub-streams" (distinguished by their packet id), each described by SDC data entity type 5.
- 1 4 services can be signalled to the user. A data service points to one data (sub-)stream. An audio service points to one audio stream plus optionally to text message information (contained in the audio stream) and/or one data (sub-)stream.
- Audio services are mapped to audio streams by SDC data entity type 9. Data (and audio) services are mapped to data streams by SDC data entity type 5.
- If several services point to the same stream, the stream configuration in SDC data entity type 5 or 9 must be identical.

EXAMPLE 1: A very simple DRM multiplex consists of just one single audio service pointing to the one and only audio stream. The audio stream may contain text messages.



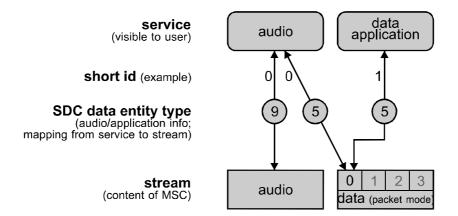
EXAMPLE 2: There are two audio services. Both point to the same audio stream. One of these services points to an additional packet mode data sub-stream carrying a multimedia data application. In total there are one audio stream and one data stream using packet mode.

Note that if multiple services point to the same stream the configuration for that stream (carried in SDC data entities type 9 for audio information or in SDC data entities type 5 for data application information) must be the same. So in this example both or none of the audio services can comprise the text message service.



EXAMPLE 3: There is one audio service and one data service signalled to the user. The DRM multiplex consists of one audio stream and one data stream in packet mode containing one sub-stream. The data service points to the data application carried in the one sub-stream of the data stream. The audio service points to the audio stream and additionally also to the one sub-stream of the data stream.

Note that in this case the data application description in the two SDC data entities type 5 must be identical for both services referencing the same packet mode sub-stream.



EXAMPLE 4: To make maximum use of the possibilities of a DRM multiplex, the following scenario is possible:

There are three audio services each pointing to its own audio stream. In addition to audio, each of these three audio streams carries text messages. Every audio service also points to its own data application carried as a sub-stream of a packet mode data stream (being the fourth stream in the DRM multiplex). Since a data stream can carry up to four sub-streams in packet mode, there can be an additional data service pointing to the fourth sub-stream of the data stream.

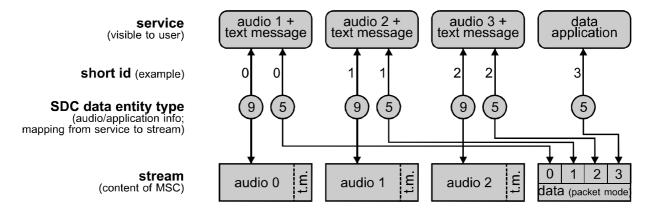
In total there are

- three audio services;
- one data service.

These four services point to 10 different "logical channels":

- three different audio streams with their own text messages;
- one data stream in packet mode with four sub-streams.

NOTE: The packet mode configuration parameters (e.g. the packet length) of all four SDC data entities type 5 (describing the four sub-streams of the one packet mode data stream) must be identical!



Annex N (informative): HVXC parameters

Table N.1: HVXC source coder parameters

Name	Meaning	Number	Fixed	Rate
		of bits	2,0 kbit/s	4,0 kbit/s
LSP1	LSP index 1	5	Х	Х
LSP2	LSP index 2	7	Х	Х
LSP3	LSP index 3	5	Х	Х
LSP4	LSP index 4	1	X	Х
VUV	voiced/unvoiced flag	2	X	Х
Pitch	pitch parameter	7	Х	Х
SE_shape1	spectrum index 0	4	Х	Х
SE_shape2	spectrum index 1	4	X	Х
SE_gain	spectrum gain index	5	X	X
VX_shape1[0]	stochastic codebook index 0	6	X	Х
VX_shape1[1]	stochastic codebook index 1	6	X	Х
VX_gain1[0]	gain codebook index 0	4	Х	Х
VX_gain1[1]	gain codebook index 1	4	Х	Х
LSP5	LSP index 5	8		X
SE_shape3	4k spectrum index 0	7		Х
SE_shape4	4k spectrum index 1	10		X
SE_shape5	4k spectrum index 2	9		X
SE_shape6	4k spectrum index 3	6		Х
VX_shape2[0]	4k stochastic codebook index 0	5		X
VX_shape2[1]	4k stochastic codebook index 1	5		X
VX_shape2[2]	4k stochastic codebook index 2	5		Х
VX_shape2[3]	4k stochastic codebook index 3	5		Х
VX_gain2[0]	4k gain codebook index 0	3		Х
VX_gain2[1]	4k gain codebook index 1	3		Х
VX_gain2[2]	4k gain codebook index 2	3		Х
VX_gain2[3]				Х
UpdateFlag	comfort noise flag	1		
NOTE: X indic	ates that the parameter is used in the	correspond	ing mode.	

Table N.2: Bit allocations of 2,0/4,0 kbit/s HVXC coder (fixed rate)

Parameter	2,0 kbit/s (f	ixed rate)	4,0 kbit/s (f	ixed rate)
	Voiced	Unvoiced	Voiced	Unvoiced
LSP	18 bits/20 ms	18 bits/20 ms	18 bits/20 ms	18 bits/20 ms
LSP(enh)			8 bits/20 ms	8 bits/20 ms
V/UV	2 bits/20 ms	2 bits/20 ms	2 bits/20 ms	2 bits/20 ms
Pitch	7 bits/20 ms		7 bits/20 ms	
spectral shape	4 + 4 bits/20 ms		4 + 4 bits/20 ms	
spectral gain	5 bits/20 ms		5 bits/20 ms	
spectral shape(enh)			32 bits/20 ms	
VXC shape		6 bits/10 ms		6 bits/10 ms
VXC gain		4 bits/10 ms		4 bits/10 ms
VXC shape(enh)				5 bits/5 ms
VXC gain(enh)				3 bits/5 ms
Total - 2,0 kbit/s	40 bits/20 ms	40 bits/20 ms		
Total - 4,0 kbit/s			80 bits/20 ms	80 bits/20 ms

Annex O (informative): Bibliography

- DRM Output Requirements, November 1999.
- ITU-R Circular letter LCCE/39: "Submission of candidate systems for digital sound broadcasting at frequencies below 30 MHz, September 1999".
- ITU-R Recommendation BS.1348: "Service requirements for digital sound broadcasting to vehicular, portable and fixed receivers using terrestrial transmitters in the LF, MF and HF bands".
- ITU-R Recommendation BS.1349: "Implementation of digital sound broadcasting to vehicular, portable and fixed receivers using terrestrial transmitters in the LF, MF and HF bands".
- ETSI TS 101 968: "Digital Radio Mondiale (DRM); Data Applications Directory".

History

	Document history					
V1.1.1	September 2001	Publication				